

# ***Using LAN Support Center***

**McAFEE**

Copyright © 1994 by McAfee, Inc. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language in any form by any means without the written permission of McAfee, Inc. 2710 Walsh Avenue, Santa Clara, California, 95051-0963.

McAfee is a registered trademark of McAfee, Inc. LAN Support Center, SiteMeter, BrightWorks, and LAN Inventory are trademarks of McAfee, Inc. All other products or services mentioned in this document are identified by the trademarks or service marks of their respective companies or organizations.

Document Release LSC.30

---

# Table of Contents

<b>Chapter 1 Introduction to LAN Support Center</b>	<b>9</b>
About LAN Support Center .....	9
Help Desks.....	10
LAN Support Center's Features .....	14
LSC's Major Components .....	15
Environment .....	18
How This Manual is Organized .....	19
 <b>Chapter 2 Installation and Configuration</b>	 <b>21</b>
Introduction .....	21
Before Installation.....	22
LSC Installation Instructions .....	23
Basic Install Procedure.....	25
Custom Install Procedure .....	27
Upgrade Procedure.....	29
Conversion Procedure.....	31
Uninstalling LSC .....	36
Installation Troubleshooting .....	36
Btrieve Configuration Options.....	38
 <b>Chapter 3 Getting Started</b>	 <b>41</b>
Introduction .....	41
Planning Your LSC Database .....	42
The LSC Application Window .....	43
Tutorial .....	52
Customizing the Database .....	52
Setting Up Accounts .....	54
Defining Qualification List Entries .....	57
Creating Tickets.....	59
Viewing the Ticket Database .....	64
Generating Reports .....	66

<b>Chapter 4 Ticket Data Display</b>	<b>69</b>
Introduction.....	69
The View Tickets Window .....	70
The Ticket Window .....	73
<b>Chapter 5 Setup and Administration</b>	<b>78</b>
Introduction.....	78
Database Labeling .....	79
Staff Membership and Security.....	83
Accounts IDs.....	88
Company IDs .....	93
Qualification Lists.....	97
Archiving and Restoring Tickets.....	105
Printer Setup and Administration .....	110
<b>Chapter 6 Work Tickets</b>	<b>112</b>
Introduction.....	112
Creating Tickets .....	113
Maintaining Ticket Information .....	121
Investigating.....	131
<b>Chapter 7 Viewing Ticket Data</b>	<b>134</b>
Introduction.....	134
Filtering the View Tickets Window Display .....	135
Sorting the View Tickets Window Display.....	139
Custom Ticket Views.....	142
Ticket Databases .....	149
<b>Chapter 8 LSC Reports</b>	<b>152</b>
Introduction.....	152
Using Pre-defined Report Style Sheets .....	153
Using Queries to Customize Reports .....	155
Adding New Reports.....	163
Sample Reports .....	165

## **Chapter 9 Introduction to Crystal Reports 174**

About This Part of the Manual.....	174
Starting Crystal Reports.....	176
Quick Start.....	178
About Crystal Reports .....	181
The Crystal Reports Window.....	182
Crystal Reports Report Windows .....	186
Getting Help with Crystal Reports.....	187

## **Chapter 10 Using Crystal Reports 188**

Using Crystal Reports.....	188
Deciding on the Content of Your Report .....	188
Developing a Prototype on Paper.....	196
Setting Up the Prototype Using Crystal Reports.....	197
The Report Editor .....	197
Building Your Prototype.....	201
Manipulating the Data with Formulas and Functions .....	204
Grouping, Summarizing, and Sorting Your Data.....	211
Summarizing the Data.....	212
Sorting .....	214
Editing and Formatting the Data.....	216
Specifying Records/Groups to be Included.....	217
Printing the Finished Report .....	218

## **Chapter 11 Practical Crystal Reports 220**

Practical Crystal Reports.....	220
Creating a Report.....	220
Manipulating Text and Data .....	247
Working with Graphics and Graphic Enhancements .....	250

## **Appendix A Error Messages 267**

LSC Error Messages .....	267
--------------------------	-----

## **Appendix B Btrieve Status Codes 273**

Btrieve Status Codes.....	273
Client-Based Btrieve for OS/2 and Windows Status Codes.....	287
Btrieve Requester Status Codes .....	288

<b>Appendix C LSC File List</b>	<b>290</b>
LSC Main File List .....	290
LSC Ticket Records Databases .....	290
LSC Administrative Databases .....	291
Pre-defined LSC Reports .....	292
LSC Dynamic Link Libraries .....	293
Crystal Reports v2.0 Files .....	294
<b>Appendix D Using Brequest</b>	<b>296</b>
Using the Btrieve NLM.....	296
Using the NLM with LSC.....	296
Using the BTRIEVE VAP.....	298
<b>Appendix E LSC Import/Export Utility</b>	<b>299</b>
Using the Import/Export Utility .....	299
Importing Data into LSC .....	300
Exporting LSC Ticket Data.....	301
<b>Index</b>	<b>303</b>

***Part One:***  
***Using LAN Support Center***

---

## Notes

---

# *Chapter 1 Introduction to LAN Support Center*

Welcome to LAN Support Center, McAfee's Windows-based problem management system.

LSC is a member of McAfee's family of network administration and management tools, a group of network applications that help you manage your LAN more effectively.

---

## **About LAN Support Center**

### **The Purpose of LSC**

LAN Support Center (LSC) tracks support activities by allowing you to create, maintain and retrieve tickets electronically. Easily accessible windows display vital information regarding the caller's equipment, software and call history. To help solve problems rapidly and identify recurring problem areas, the LSC database gives you instant access to information regarding help desk activity.

LSC also provides management with automated tools to supervise support operations more efficiently. Call histories, support procedure documents and scripts can all be accessed easily to help staff rapidly identify and diagnose problems. Data in every help desk session can be consolidated to analyze staff performance and response times. Help desk issues and their solutions can also be analyzed to identify recurring problem areas which may need configuration adjustments or user training programs.

LSC is a sophisticated yet easy-to-use ticketing system based on a powerful database technology. Each organization can customize the LSC database field labels, the ticket list information display and the information to be included in reports. This ability to customize LSC results in more streamlined workflow.

LSC is a fully compatible Microsoft Windows 3.1 system. Familiar Windows techniques execute commands, scroll and select list information, and open, close and move between multiple windows. Entering, editing, cutting and pasting functions are also consistent with Windows, minimizing required training time.

The reports included with LSC provide management with valuable information regarding staff response time, frequency of problem occurrence, and customer support requests. These reports can be customized to satisfy the requirements of each organization. LSC also includes Crystal Reports, a powerful and easy-to-use custom report writer.

---

## Help Desks

### The Problem

The help desk is emerging as a central, corporate organization designed to solve end-user computer hardware and software problems quickly. With the increasing reliance on computers in today's workplace, the effectiveness of the help desk staff has direct impact on workstation user productivity and organization profitability. Automated problem management systems, such as McAfee's LAN Support Center, can have a dramatic impact on how rapidly user problems are resolved and can help managers record and understand data on how the help desk is functioning.

Today's help desk organization faces numerous challenges. As incoming call volumes increase, the time required to log problems manually (i.e., write down messages, problem descriptions and user configurations) negatively effects productivity. It is critical that calls are neither lost nor follow-up activities misplaced and forgotten. Thus arises the need to analyze help desk operations in order to develop programs which minimize user downtime.

Like all other corporate organizations, help desks are asked to do more with less staff. Valuable senior technical staff must be utilized wisely, and junior staff must develop their support skills independently. Within the growing computer user population, perhaps the most critical demand of help desks is to resolve problems faster than ever before.

### The McAfee Solution

LAN Support Center is a powerful problem management system that tracks support activities by creating a ticket for every support call. LSC lets you record all necessary details in easy-to-use screens that are fully customized to your organization and individual support staff preferences. By replacing manual procedures with sophisticated information management functions that track a ticket

until it is resolved, LSC dramatically improves help desk operations. Support staff spend less time with paperwork and more time on actually solving problems.

## The Cost

The justification for automating help desk operations consists of two important elements. First is the direct time saved by the help desk staff in the performance of daily activities. Second are the intangible costs to corporate users and help desk departments that are incurred when users cannot be supported as rapidly as possible. Both cost saving elements are discussed below.

## Time Cost Savings

*Help Desk Practices*,<sup>1</sup> a survey published by the Help Desk Institute about its membership, confirms the broad range of sizes of help desk organizations and user communities. A profile of a five person help desk organization is as follows:

Number of Employees: 5

Average annual salary and benefits (all help desk departmental employees): \$35,000

Average hourly wage: \$17.00

Average number of users supported: 2,500

Average number of calls/month: 2,000

Cost/month (assuming 5 days/week of operation):  $\$35,000/12 \times 5$  employees: \$14,583/month

Average percentage calls resolved by the help desk: 71%

Average number of calls resolved by the help desk: 1,420

Cost/call/month:  $\$14,583/1,420$  calls: \$10.20/call

LSC can increase the productivity of existing staff by over 20% in comparison with manual systems. These productivity increases are the direct result of eliminating many of the labor-intensive activities connected with receiving and following through on a support problem. LSC eliminates the time required to manually record details about the caller and the problem. LSC electronically displays configuration and call history information and can help staff members retrieve existing solutions. By capturing help desk information electronically, problem data can be analyzed to identify potential networking improvements that could eliminate future help desk calls.

The model below characterizes the hard cost savings that exist for automated help desks with a 20% productivity increase at current calling rates. At 20%, the cost per

---

<sup>1</sup>Help Desk Institute, *Help Desk Practices, A Survey of Help Desk Institute Members*, (Colorado Springs, CO: Help Desk Institute, 1993).

call savings can justify an additional employee. More importantly, productivity time savings can be the vital resource for those help desks grappling with increasing demands to support new technologies and manage changes to existing hardware and software installations.

	<b>Help Desks with No Automation</b>	<b>Expected Savings with LSC (20% savings)</b>
<b># of Calls</b>	1,420	1,420
<b>Calls/year:</b>	17,040	17,040
<b>Cost/call:</b>	\$10.20	\$8.16
<b>Costs/year:</b>	\$173,808	\$139,046
<b>Savings/year:</b>		<b>\$ 34,762</b>

## Hidden Cost Savings

LSC's most important benefit is its ability to free up staff time. This increases the number of end users served and makes time available to gain expertise in emerging technologies. According to the Help Desk Institute, its members reported that the issues impacting help desk operations include calls related to new technology support, new customers and changes and upgrades to existing systems. LSC gives your staff the time it needs to keep pace with your growing user community and to stay on top of rapid technological change.

By making your staff more effective, LSC reduces one of your corporation's most critical hidden costs—lost worker productivity. LSC provides support staff with the tools to resolve calls rapidly and share information to maximize technical expertise. This “found time” can be used for any number of activities, including the following:

- ☐ application training to reduce the need for support calls
- ☐ cross training to expand your users' knowledge base
- ☐ keeping up with industry technology changes
- ☐ planning for network expansions

---

## LAN Support Center's Features

LSC automates ticket creation, problem management and the reporting requirements of an active help desk. LSC simplifies help desk operations by eliminating the paperwork that slows down your response to support calls. LSC's database maintains support information on-line and lets you quickly view your caller's support history and search for similar problems, to diagnose support problems rapidly. To meet the individual needs of your organization, you can customize many aspects of LSC: field labels, ticket listings and the type of information stored and included on reports.

With McAfee's LAN Support Center, you can perform the following functions:

- ☐ Track support activities by creating a ticket for every support call, stored in a powerful ticket database.
- ☐ Build, edit, display and select from lists of customized information needed to create or manage a ticket.
- ☐ Give staff and managers a snapshot of current support activities, all active tickets and the status of any support problems.
- ☐ Maintain user and equipment profiles on-line to rapidly display a caller's configuration.
- ☐ Assign up to four priority levels so urgent problems get quicker attention and resolution.
- ☐ Route calls to other or more qualified support technicians to get the most productivity out of junior, senior and specialized technicians.
- ☐ Automate record-keeping and reporting by electronically capturing the entire history of the help desk session—including all ticket information, actions taken and follow-up activities.
- ☐ Sort, display and save any user-defined, cross section "view" of the ticket database, to facilitate a particular job function.
- ☐ Filter sections of the ticket database for display or reporting, eliminating extraneous information.
- ☐ Display multiple windows of ticketing or departmental information simultaneously, and let users rapidly move between windows to create and process a ticket quickly and accurately.
- ☐ Display solutions to recurring or past problems to quickly resolve similar situations.
- ☐ Provide powerful query, sorting and reporting features to generate daily and periodic performance reports.

- ☐ Produce a variety of standard reports detailing support productivity and help desk operations.
- ☐ Utilize Crystal Reports, a powerful, flexible and easy-to-use report generator to produce LSC information in an unlimited number of formats.
- ☐ Store custom report formats for future use.
- ☐ Archive and restore inactive tickets whenever necessary to utilize disk space efficiently.
- ☐ Support file importing and exporting to share data between LSC and other applications.
- ☐ Display on-line help information.
- ☐ Protect against unauthorized access through log-in password security.

LAN Support Center integrates with the following applications:

- ☐ Novell Btrieve Record Manager - LSC uses the fast and highly sophisticated database system for database management.
- ☐ Microsoft Windows 3.1 - LSC supports the familiar user interface to minimize training time and maximize ease of use.
- ☐ Other McAfee network management applications as follows:
  - LSC links to LAN Inventory for a comprehensive and accurate description of a user's hardware configuration.
  - LSC connects to SiteMeter to identify user software version and revision levels. Support staff can also determine whether a user is "locked out" of a metered application due to licensing limits.
  - LSC accesses NetRemote to run the user's workstation remotely, without leaving the help desk.

---

## LSC's Major Components

The LAN Support Center software consists of one executable file and several supporting components. As an introduction to the entire product, this section briefly describes each LSC component. A complete list of LSC files is provided in Appendix C.

The LSC components are:

- ☐ LAN Support Center Console (LSC.EXE)
- ☐ LAN Support Center Database Lists
- ☐ Reporting Module
- ☐ Import/Export Utility

## LSC Console

LSC.EXE is the LSC console and administrative program which provides access to most LSC functions. This main module is a Windows-based program and is intended to be used by the support administrator and the support staff members.

The administrative functions available from the LSC console include:

- ☐ Setting up staff members and defining access rights
- ☐ Customizing the LSC database labels
- ☐ Maintaining the database lists
- ☐ Archiving and restoring tickets

The support staff functions available from the LSC console include:

- ☐ Generating tickets to track events
- ☐ Maintaining ticket information and related activities
- ☐ Modifying ticket views to speed support response time
- ☐ Customizing and generating reports

## LSC Database Lists

LSC is an integrated database system which tracks and manages all information regarding ticket data. Novell's Btrieve is used as the database record manager. LSC's major databases are:

- ☐ **Current Ticket Database** - the group of tickets to which new tickets are added. There is only one current database at any time.
- ☐ **Historical Ticket Database(s)** - a group of tickets that have been removed from the current database. These archived tickets can be loaded into LSC for reference purposes; however, changes to the historical database tickets should not be made. There can be any number of historical databases.

- ❑ **Qualification Lists** - the categorized lists of information entered into LSC which act as reference aids to facilitate data entry and maintain the integrity of the data files.

Appendix C provides a complete list of the LSC data and executable files.

## Reporting Module

LSC is shipped with several pre-defined reports that represent reports often requested by support desk management. These reports provide valuable information regarding ticket activity, staff response time, problem types, and much more.

LSC's pre-defined reports can be customized to reflect individual reporting requirements. By applying filtering criteria (i.e., a "query") to a pre-defined report, the report will only include the data in the LSC database that matches the query constraints. These customized reports can be saved for future use.

LSC also includes the Crystal Reports software, a powerful and easy-to-use report generator. With Crystal Reports, you can create and customize your own reports using data from the LSC database. Powerful calculation and formatting features will help you generate more meaningful performance monitoring and analytical reports.

---

### NOTE:

**The Crystal Reports software is installed using the LSC install utility. A Crystal Reports program icon is added to the McAfee Program Manager group. Procedures for using Crystal Reports are presented in Part Two of this manual.**

---

## Import/ Export Utility

The LSC import/export utility is a DOS application which enables the transfer of ticket data into and out of LAN Support Center. Upon installation, the utility (LSCIMEX.EXE) is copied into the LSC program directory.

LAN Support Center ticket and action information can be exported into an ASCII text file for use in another database application. Similarly, data from comma delimited ASCII files can be imported into LSC.

Because LSC 3.0 has a customizable interface, most data fields are not restricted to a particular format. The import/export utility will match the field names in LSC even if they have been changed by the administrator. The only fields that have a specified format are date and time fields. All other fields may be of any type or format.

Procedures for using the import/export utility are discussed in Appendix E.

---

## Environment

The following minimum criteria must be met in order to run LAN Support Center:

- ☐ 386SX CPU
- ☐ 4 MB of RAM
- ☐ Novell Btrieve Record Manager
- ☐ Windows 3.1 in Enhanced Mode

---

### NOTES:

**a - LSC can operate on Novell NetWare via IPX/SPX and is compatible with NetWare 4.0 and NMS.**

**b - LSC will work with Client Based and Server Based Btrieve. Server Based Btrieve (BREQUEST version 6.10) is recommended for increased performance. Refer to Appendix D for more information on using BREQUEST.**

---

---

## How This Manual is Organized

This manual is organized in three parts:

- ☐ Part One: Using LAN Support Center
- ☐ Part Two: Using Crystal Reports
- ☐ Part Three: Reference Guide

The individual chapters in each part of the manual are listed in the tables below.

### Part One: Using LAN Support Center

CHAPTER	DESCRIPTION
Chapter 1: <b>Introduction to LAN Support Center</b>	Provides introductory information about LSC, its requirements and how to receive technical support.
Chapter 2: <b>Installation &amp; Configuration</b>	Provides complete installation instructions and troubleshooting information. It also discusses the configuration of Novell's Btrieve record manager.
Chapter 3: <b>Getting Started</b>	Discusses the LSC interface and provides a tutorial for the first time LSC user.
Chapter 4: <b>Ticket Data Display</b>	Presents an overview of the various windows that display the ticket data maintained by LSC.
Chapter 5: <b>Setup and Administration</b>	Describes the procedures for defining the LSC database labels, assigning staff membership and security, managing the qualification lists, archiving/restoring tickets and configuring print parameters.
Chapter 6: <b>Work Tickets</b>	Describes the procedures for creating and maintaining work tickets.
Chapter 7: <b>Viewing Ticket Data</b>	Discusses the various methods available for viewing ticket information.
Chapter 8: <b>LSC Reports</b>	Discusses procedures for generating both pre-defined and custom reports. Illustrates and discusses each report type.

**Part Two: Using Crystal Reports**

CHAPTER	DESCRIPTION
Chapter 9: <b>Introduction to Crystal Reports</b>	Provides a brief overview of Crystal Reports to familiarize you with the Crystal Reports screens, using the mouse, error messages, and the help facility.
Chapter 10: <b>Using Crystal Reports</b>	Conceptually leads you through the process of creating a report with Crystal Reports. It suggests a methodology for creating reports starting with nothing more than a one sentence statement of purpose for the report.
Chapter 11: <b>Practical Crystal Reports</b>	Contains a variety of report creation topics and additional information on the practical aspects of using Crystal Reports to solve typical reporting problems.

**Part Three: Reference Guide**

CHAPTER	DESCRIPTION
Appendix A: <b>Error Messages</b>	Lists the error messages associated with LSC and provides explanations for each.
Appendix B: <b>Btrieve Status Codes</b>	Lists the error messages associated with Novell's Btrieve and provides explanations for each.
Appendix C: <b>LSC File List</b>	Lists and defines the files included with LSC.
Appendix D: <b>Using Brequest</b>	Provides recommendations on how to setup and use BREQUEST.
Appendix E: <b>LSC Import/Export Utility</b>	Provides instructions on using the import/export utility.

This ends the introduction to LAN Support Center. Refer to the next chapter for installation and configuration instructions.

## Chapter 2 Installation and Configuration

The previous chapter introduced LAN Support Center. This chapter describes the installation procedures for LAN Support Center and provides an installation troubleshooting section. It also discusses the configuration of Novell's Btrieve record manager.

---

**NOTE:**

**If you purchased LAN Support Center with McAfee's BrightWorks package 2.01 or later, refer to Chapter 2, "Installation" in either your *Getting Started: BrightWorks* guide or your *Using BrightWorks Manual*.**

---

---

## Introduction

### What's in this Chapter

The following chart describes the sections in this chapter:

SECTION	DESCRIPTION
Before Installation	Lists several requirements that must be met before installing the LSC software.
LSC Installation Instructions	Provides instructions on installing LSC. The options are: Basic Install, Custom Install, Upgrade and Conversion. The procedures for each option are discussed in their separate sections in this chapter.
Uninstalling LSC	Provides procedures for removing the LSC software.
Installation Troubleshooting	Lists the messages that might display during the installation procedure.
Btrieve Configuration Options	Presents the alternatives for configuring the Btrieve Record Manager.

---

## Before Installation

LAN Support Center can be used in either a stand-alone or a networked environment. In both cases, you must run Windows 3.1 in enhanced mode.

### LSC and NetWare

For LSC installation and use on a Novell NetWare network, the following file versions are recommended:

- ☐ IPX version 3.10
- ☐ NETX version 3.26 or greater
- ☐ VIPX version 1.13
- ☐ NETWARE.DRV version 2.02
- ☐ VNETWARE.386 version 1.06
- ☐ Windows version 3.1 (enhanced mode)

---

NOTE:

**If you are using ODI drivers instead of IPX, you must have the following:**

- LSL version 1.2 or 2.01**
  - IPXODI.COM version 1.2 or 2.1**
- 

The latest versions of these files can be found on Compuserve in Library 5 of the Novell Libraries (GO NOVLIB; Lib 5). As of this writing, the current IPX, NETX, and IPXODI are contained within the self-extracting file DOSUP9.EXE.

The current versions of the Novell support drivers for Windows (VIPX.386, VNETWARE.386, NETWARE.DRV, etc.) can be found in the self-extracting file WINUP9.EXE.

---

NOTE:

**As these drivers are updated and added to the Compuserve file, the number within the Compuserve filename will increment. For example, if Novell were to release a newer IPX and add it to DOSUP9.EXE, the name would change to DOSUP10.EXE.**

---

## Determining Version Numbers

You can determine the versions of the above software by using the following methods:

- ☐ To determine the installed version of IPX and the NET shell, use the Novell NVER command.
- ☐ To determine the version and mode of Windows, run Windows and choose the About Program Manager command from the Program Manager Help menu.
- ☐ To determine the version of your Novell Windows support drivers, use the Novell VERSION command. For example, type:

```
VERSION VNETWARE.386 <ENTER>
```

- ☐ To determine the version of your IPXODI.COM file, use the Novell VERSION command. For example, type:

```
VERSION IPXODI.COM <ENTER>
```

---

## LSC Installation Instructions

This section provides the step-by-step instructions necessary to install LAN Support Center.

Follow the steps below to install LSC. You can exit the installation at any time by choosing the Exit button in the lower right corner of the installation screen.

1. Run Windows 3.1 in enhanced mode.
2. Place distribution diskette #1 in your floppy drive.
3. Choose the Run command from the Program Manager File menu.

The Run dialog box displays.

4. In the Command Line field, enter the drive letter of the floppy drive where you inserted the distribution diskette. Enter the SETUP command, and then choose the OK button.

Your Run dialog box should look similar to Figure 2-1.

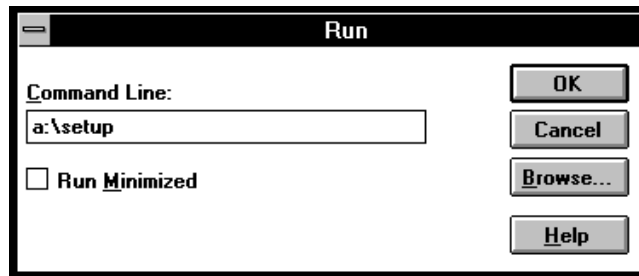


Figure 2-1: Initiating the LSC Install Procedure

Upon choosing the OK button, a Log File named LSC300.LOG is created and placed in your local WINDOWS directory. The Log File is an ASCII file listing the date, time and location of the LSC installation.

The Log File also lists any errors that occurred during installation. If an error that prevents completion of the installation process occurs, the Log File automatically displays.

5. If LSC finds an existing Log File, you are asked if you want to overwrite the old file.

If you answer Yes to this prompt, the existing file is overwritten and the install program continues. If you answer No, you are prompted to enter a new Log File name for this LSC installation.

After responding to this message, the Install Options dialog box displays.

6. Select one of the following install options, and then choose the OK button.
  - ☐ **Basic Install** - runs the install process with minimal user input; automatically creates the Program Manager group McAfee (if not found) containing the LSC program icon, LSC README file icon and Crystal Reports icon. Refer to the instructions on page 25.
  - ☐ **Custom Install** - allows you to choose specific install actions: install LSC program files on the file server, serialize product executables, create the McAfee Program Manager group and the program icons, and install the Crystal Reports software. Refer to the instructions on page 27.
  - ☐ **Upgrade** - allows you to upgrade your existing LSC 2.02 software and database files with minimal user input. Refer to the instructions on page 29.
  - ☐ **Conversion** - allows you to convert additional LSC 2.02 database files. Refer to the instructions on page 31.

---

NOTE:

**The Conversion option allows you to convert multiple LSC 2.02 database files. Before choosing the Conversion option, the LSC 3.0 software must already have been installed using the Basic, Custom or Upgrade install options.**

---

Refer to the appropriate section in this chapter for procedures regarding the selected option.

---

## Basic Install Procedure

The Basic Install process automatically performs the following operations:

- ☐ Installs the LSC software

- ☐ Installs the LSC license
- ☐ Installs the Crystal Reports software into the LSC program directory
- ☐ Creates a Program Manager group McAfee containing the following program icons: LSC 3.00, LSC README, Crystal Reports

Continue with the following steps to complete the Basic Install procedure:

7. In the Enter Pathname dialog box, enter the full pathname to where the LSC files should be copied and choose the OK button.

LSC will create the directory if it does not exist. (LSC will only create one subdirectory level.)

If LSC already exists in the specified directory, a prompt displays asking whether or not you wish to replace the existing copy of LSC. Choose the Yes button to overwrite the existing files, or choose the No button to abort the installation.

8. The install program prompts you for each LSC program diskette. Place the requested diskette in the floppy drive, and choose the OK button to continue.
9. In the Enter Serial Number dialog box, enter the serial number of your LSC software and choose the OK button.

The serial number is the *last 7 digits* located on the label of your distribution diskettes.

10. In the Enter Company Name dialog box, enter your Company Name and choose the OK button.

The length of the Company Name must be between 1 and 20 characters.

11. In the Modification of WIN.INI dialog box, choose either the Yes or No button to continue.

- ☐ **Choosing the Yes button** - By choosing this button, your existing local WIN.INI file is backed up as WIN.BDI. In the [Extensions] section of the new WIN.INI file, the following line is added:

```
rpt=CRW.exe ^.rpt
```

- ☐ **Choosing the No button** - By choosing this button, your existing WIN.INI file is not modified. The changes that need to be made to the WIN.INI file (listed above) are saved in the file named WIN.BDI.

12. Several messages display recommending that you modify your WIN.INI file (as in step #11 above), check the LSC log file, and review the LSC README file. Choose the OK button after reading each message.

To view the LSC log file, use any text-based program (e.g., Notepad). To open the README file, double click on the icon in the McAfee Program Manager group.

---

## Custom Install Procedure

The Custom Install process gives you the option to perform any of the following operations:

- ☐ Install the LSC software
- ☐ Serialize the LSC product executables
- ☐ Install the Crystal Reports software
- ☐ Create a Program Manager group McAfee containing the following program icons: LSC 3.00, LSC README, and Crystal Reports (if installed)

Continue with the following steps to complete the Custom Install procedure:

7. In the Custom Install Options dialog box, select the desired install option(s), and choose the OK button.

Place a checkmark next to the install options you want to perform.

The prompts which subsequently display depend on the install option(s) you select here.

8. In the Enter Pathname dialog box, enter the full pathname to the LSC program directory and choose the OK button.

If you are installing the software for the first time, then specify the full pathname to the directory in which the files should be copied.

If you have already installed the software and you are installing the license or creating the Program Manager group at this time, then specify the full pathname to the directory in which the LSC files already exist.

LSC will create the directory if it does not exist. (LSC will only create one subdirectory level.)

If you have selected the "Install files to your desired drive" option and the LSC files already exist in the specified directory, a prompt displays asking whether or not you wish to replace the existing copy of LSC. Choose the Yes button to overwrite the existing files, or choose the No button to keep the existing files.

9. The install program prompts you for the LSC program diskettes. Place the requested diskette in the floppy drive, and choose the OK button to continue.

The disks you are prompted for depend on the install options you selected in step #7 above.

10. In the Enter Serial Number dialog box, enter the serial number of your LSC software and choose the OK button.

This prompt displays if you are installing the LSC software or the LSC license.

The serial number is the *last 7 digits* located on the label of your distribution diskettes.

11. In the Enter Company Name dialog box, enter your Company Name and choose the OK button.

This prompt displays if you are installing the LSC software or the LSC license.

The length of the Company Name must be between 1 and 20 characters.

12. In the Modification of WIN.INI dialog box, choose either the Yes or No button to continue.

This prompt displays if you are installing the Crystal Reports software.

- ☐ **Choosing the Yes button** - By choosing this button, your existing local WIN.INI file is backed up as WIN.BDI. In the [Extensions] section of the new WIN.INI file, the following line is added:

```
rpt=CRW.exe ^.rpt
```

- ☐ **Choosing the No button** - By choosing this button, your existing WIN.INI file is not modified. The changes that need to be made to

the WIN.INI file (listed above) are saved in the file named WIN.BDI.

13. Several messages display recommending that you modify your WIN.INI file (as in step #12 above), check the LSC log file, and review the LSC README file. Choose the OK button after reading each message.

To view the LSC log file, use any text-based program (e.g., Notepad). To open the README file, double click on the icon in the McAfee Program Manager group.

---

## Upgrade Procedure

The Upgrade option installs the new LSC software and converts the existing 2.02 data files into the new format.

---

NOTE:

**Backup all existing LSC files before upgrading the LSC software.**

---

The Upgrade from 2.02 install option automatically performs the following actions:

- ☐ Installs the LSC 3.0 software
- ☐ Converts the LSC 2.02 data files to the 3.0 format
- ☐ Installs the LSC license
- ☐ Creates a Program Manager group McAfee which contains the following program icons: LSC 3.00, LSC README, Crystal Reports (if installed)

You are also given the option to install the Crystal Reports software into the LSC program directory and to convert additional LSC 2.02 databases to the 3.0 format.

Continue with the following steps to complete the Upgrade procedure:

7. In the Upgrade Install Options dialog box, indicate whether you want to install the Crystal Reports software. Then choose the OK button.

Note that the Crystal Reports software can be installed at a later time using the LSC Custom Install procedure.

8. In the Enter Pathname dialog box, enter the LSC 2.02 source directory and choose the OK button.

The source directory is the directory in which the existing LSC version 2.02 files exist. Specify the full pathname.

9. In the subsequent Enter Pathname dialog box which displays, enter the destination directory and choose the OK button.

The destination directory is the directory in which you want the new LSC 3.0 files to be copied. Specify the full pathname.

If you entered your existing LSC 2.02 directory as the destination directory, then a message displays informing you that the LSC 2.02 files will be overwritten. Choose the OK button to proceed with the upgrade, or choose the Cancel button to specify another destination directory.

10. The install program prompts you for the LSC program diskettes. Place the requested diskette in the floppy drive, and choose the OK button to continue.
11. In the Enter Serial Number dialog box, enter the serial number of your LSC 3.0 software and choose the OK button.

The serial number is the *last 7 digits* located on the label of your distribution diskettes.

12. In the Enter Company Name dialog box, enter your Company Name and choose the OK button.

The length of the Company Name must be between 1 and 20 characters.

13. A message displays prompting you to convert the existing LSC 2.02 data files into the LSC 3.0 format. Choose the Convert button to convert the LSC 2.02 data files.

If you do not want to convert the data files at this time, choose the No button. (You can later use the LSC Conversion option to convert the data files.)

Upon choosing the OK button, the conversion routine begins.

14. After the database files are successfully converted, a prompt displays asking if you want to convert a subsequent 2.02 database.

To convert another database, choose the Yes button.

To exit the upgrade procedure, choose the No button.

15. If you answered Yes to the above prompt and wish to convert another database, you are prompted to enter the source directory.

As in step #8 above, enter the full pathname to the directory in which the additional LSC version 2.02 database files exist.

You can continue to execute steps #14 and 15 for each LSC 2.02 database you need to convert.

16. In the Modification of WIN.INI dialog box, choose either the Yes or No button to continue.

This prompt displays if you are installing the Crystal Reports software.

- ☐ **Choosing the Yes button** - By choosing this button, your existing local WIN.INI file is backed up as WIN.BDI. In the [Extensions] section of the new WIN.INI file, the following line is added:

```
rpt=CRW.exe ^.rpt
```

- ☐ **Choosing the No button** - By choosing this button, your existing WIN.INI file is not modified. The changes that need to be made to the WIN.INI file (listed above) are saved in the file named WIN.BDI.

17. Several messages display recommending that you modify your WIN.INI file (as in step #15 above), check the LSC log file, and review the LSC README file. Choose the OK button after reading each message.

To view the LSC log file, use any text-based program (e.g., Notepad). To open the README file, double click on the icon in the McAfee Program Manager group.

---

## Conversion Procedure

The Conversion option gives you the opportunity to convert any additional LSC 2.02 data files into the new 3.0 format. These converted database files are appended to the data files in your LSC 3.0 program directory.

---

NOTE:

**The LSC 3.0 software must be installed before choosing the Conversion option. Use the Basic, Custom or Upgrade install option to first install the 3.0 software.**

---

Continue with the following steps to complete the Conversion procedure:

7. In the Enter Pathname dialog box, enter the LSC 2.02 source directory and choose the OK button.

The source directory is the directory in which the existing LSC version 2.02 database files exist. Specify the full pathname.

8. In the subsequent Enter Pathname dialog box which displays, enter the destination directory and choose the OK button.

The destination directory is your LSC 3.0 program directory. Specify the full pathname.

Upon choosing the OK button, the conversion routine begins.

9. After the database files are successfully converted, a prompt displays asking if you want to convert a subsequent 2.02 database.

To convert another database, choose the Yes button.

To exit the conversion routine, choose the No button.

10. If you answered Yes to the above prompt and wish to convert another database, you are prompted to enter the source directory.

As in step #7 above, enter the full pathname to the directory in which the additional LSC version 2.02 database files exist.

You can continue to execute steps #7 through 10 for each LSC 2.02 database you need to convert.

## Upgrade Conversion Charts

The following charts list the database fields that are converted when upgrading from LSC 2.x to LSC 3.0. The windows or dialog boxes on which the LSC 3.0 fields appear are listed in parenthesis beneath the LSC 3.0 file name.

### LSC 2.x File: ACCOUNT.DAT

Account
First Name
Last Name
Voice Phone
Department
NetNumber + NodeAddress

⇒

### LSC 3.0 File: HLPDSK1C.DAT

(Ticket window, Setup Account dialog box)

Account
First Name
Last Name
Phone
Department
Network Address

### LSC 3.0 File: HLPDSK1Z.DAT

(Contact Details and Setup Company dialog boxes)

Account ID	⇒	Company ID
Address 1	⇒	Address 1
Address 2	⇒	Address 2
City	⇒	City
State	⇒	State
Zip	⇒	Zip
Fax Phone	⇒	Fax #
Data Phone	⇒	Email

**LSC 2.x File: CAT.DAT**

**LSC 3.0 File: HLPDSK1G.DAT**

(Ticket window, Qualification Lists  
dialog box)

Category ID	⇒	Problem Type
Full Name	⇒	Product Category

**LSC 2.x File: DEPT.DAT****LSC 3.0 File: HLPDSK1D.DAT**(Ticket window, Qualification Lists  
dialog box)

Department	⇒	Department
------------	---	------------

**LSC 2.x File:  
PROBTYPE.DAT****LSC 3.0 File: HLPDSK1G.DAT**(Ticket window, Qualification Lists  
dialog box)

“LSC 2.x”	⇒	Problem Type
Problem Type	⇒	Product Category

**NOTE:**

Since the Problem Type in LSC 2.x allows 30 characters, it will be converted to Product Category in LSC 3.0. These product category items will be the related items for the problem type entry of “LSC 2.x”.

**LSC 2.x File: CLASS.DAT****LSC 3.0 File: HLPDSK1G.DAT**(Ticket window, Qualification Lists  
dialog box)

Class ID	⇒	Problem Type
Full Name	⇒	Product Category

**LSC 2.x File:  
SUPPORT.DAT****LSC 3.0 File: HLPDSK1S.DAT**

(Setup Staff dialog box)

Support Person (initialized)	⇒	Staff Initials
Support Person	⇒	Full Name
Password	⇒	Password

**LSC 2.x File:  
EXPERT.DAT**

Trouble	⇒	New Ticket & Edit Ticket
Reports	⇒	Reports

Administration	⇒	Setup Staff & Label Options & Qualification List
----------------	---	--

**NOTE:**

**The password in LSC 2.x will be truncated to the new length of 8 characters. The conversion will determine staff initials for the Support Person. The corresponding rights for each support person will be retrieved from EXPERT.DAT.**

**LSC 2.x File:  
TICKET.DAT**
**LSC 3.0 File: HLPDSK1H.DAT**

(Ticket window)

Account	⇒	Account
First Name	⇒	First Name
Last Name	⇒	Last Name
Phone	⇒	Phone
Department	⇒	Department
NetNumber + NodeAddress	⇒	Network Address
Problem Type	⇒	Product Category
Status	⇒	Opened or Closed
Opened by or Assigned To	⇒	Assigned To
Opened Date	⇒	Opened Date
Opened Time	⇒	Opened Time
Closed Date	⇒	Closed Date
Closed Time	⇒	Closed Time

**NOTE:**

**If the Assigned to field in LSC 2.x is blank, then the Opened by field will be converted to the Assigned to field in LSC 3.0. The corresponding ticket number in LSC 3.0 is a combination of the Assigned to initials, the Ticket Date, and the Opened Time. If the status is OPEN or ASSI, the status will be Opened in LSC 3.0. If it is CLOS or INAC, the status will be Closed in LSC 3.0.**

**LSC 2.x File:  
TNOTES.DAT**
**LSC 3.0 File: HLPDSK1P.DAT**

(Ticket window)

Notes	⇒	Problem Description
-------	---	---------------------

NOTE:

**The Notes field on the ticket is converted to the problem description in LSC 3.0.**

---

---

## Uninstalling LSC

Use the following procedure to remove the LAN Support Center program.

1. Delete the LSC program directory.

All LSC executable files and data files will be erased.

---

NOTE:

**To move LSC to another location (e.g., from one file server to another), use the Windows File Manager utility to move the entire LSC program directory. It is highly recommended that you first backup the existing LSC program directory before moving it to another location.**

---

---

## Installation Troubleshooting

If you receive any errors while installing or upgrading LSC, display the log file to view the errors and possible solutions. The errors are listed here for your reference.

**A log file with the name LOGFILE was found. Do you wish to overwrite this file?**

A prior version of the log file has been detected in your Windows directory. Choose the Yes button to overwrite the existing log file, or choose the No button to specify a new log file name.

**Are you sure you want to CANCEL installation?**

This message displays if you have chosen to cancel the installation. You must verify the decision by choosing either the Yes or No button.

**Converting LSC 2.02 databases requires LSC 3.00 files. Setup could not find LSC 3.00 files in your specified directory. Please choose other upgrade option instead.**

You must already have installed the LSC 3.0 software in order to convert LSC 2.02 databases. Choose the OK button in response to this message. Either choose another option to install the software, or specify a valid source LSC 3.0 program directory.

**DRIVELETTER is an invalid drive. Choose OK to choose another drive.**

You have entered an invalid disk designation. Correct the entry to continue.

**Error calling DLL function. This indicates that install was unable to find PROGLIB.DLL or NETWARE.DRV didn't load or wasn't configured in your SYSTEM.INI file.**

The install was unable to find a file necessary to continue the installation. Please confirm that your Windows environment is configured to run with NetWare (NETx 3.22 or greater) and that your Windows directory is not MAP ROOTed. Also verify the following:

- The shells are loaded.
- The following line is included in your SYSTEM.INI file in the [386Enh] section:  
network=\*vnetbios, vnetware.386, vipx.386
- You have Write and Modify rights to your Windows directory.

**Install did not find a copy of LSC 2.02 in DESIGNATEDPATH. Please choose another path.**

You have chosen to upgrade a previous copy of LSC; however, no copy exists in the designated directory. Choose the OK button in response to this message, and enter a valid LSC 3.0 pathname.

**Install found another, possibly older, copy of LSC. Would you want to upgrade this copy?**

Install found an older copy of LSC. Choose the Yes button to upgrade the existing LSC files.

**Not enough space on DISK to install LSC. Please choose OK to try another target disk.**

There is not enough space on your target drive. Either choose another drive or make room on the target disk.

**Please enter a company name with a minimum of 1 character and a maximum of 20 characters.**

The length of the company name must be between 1 and 20 characters.

**Serialization Error: Install encountered a fatal error attempting to serialize LSC.EXE. Please contact McAfee Technical Support at (908) 530-9650.**

The install was unable to serialize the executable. LSC cannot be run unless the executable is serialized properly.

**The serial number you have entered is not valid. Please enter the last 7 digits of the serial number and password as they appear on the original LSC diskette.**

You have entered an invalid serial number.

**The target location must be different than the source. Please specify a different location.**

When transferring files, the source and destination must be different.

**There is not enough space on DISKDRIVE to perform a complete install of LAN Support Center. Choose Yes to continue installing LAN Support Center. Choose No to cancel the installation.**

Install detected that there was not enough space on the designated disk drive to perform a complete install. Choose Yes to continue the installation if you are not transferring files or are copying over existing files with the same name.

**This installation FAILED/ABORTED. Please run Install again to be sure that LSC is installed correctly. Choose OK to exit Install and view the install log file.**

If you received a FATAL ERROR or chose to abort the installation, you will receive this error and then the log file will be displayed automatically.

**Unable to copy or decompress file: FILENAME. Make sure that you have permission to write to the designated path and that you have included the drive letter.**

The install program was unable to copy or decompress the designated file from the source diskette. Verify your rights and try the installation again.

**Unable to create specified path: PATH. Please enter a correct path such as SUBDIRECTORY.**

The target path cannot be created. Install can only create one layer of subdirectories.

**Unable to create specified path: PATHNAME. Please enter a correct path such as SUGGESTEDPATHNAME.**

The target path cannot be created. The install can only create one layer of subdirectories.

**You have entered WRONGDISK. Install needs LAN Support Center Disk #CORRECTDISKNUMBER.**

You have put the wrong disk into the floppy drive.

**Your entry is not a valid 7 digit number. If the serial number printed on your original disk is LSC-300-XXXXXXX, please enter XXXXXX as the serial number.**

The serial number has been entered incorrectly.

---

## Btrieve Configuration Options

LAN Support Center uses the Novell Btrieve Record Manager as its record manager. Btrieve is integrated with NetWare and offers an extremely high performance mechanism for storing information. In addition, Btrieve is the basis for Novell's Network Management System (NMS), which allows McAfee to integrate with this important management platform more easily.

There are two methods of implementing Btrieve:

- ☐ **Server-based** - All data processing is done at the file server by the Brequestor (the Btrieve NLM or VAP). Each workstation communicates with the NLM or VAP by loading BREQUEST.EXE in the local PC's memory.

Brequest uses 31-45KB of RAM, depending on the options specified. (Version 6.10 or greater is required when using Brequest with LSC.) It

is much faster than the local Btrieve; however, it requires that the NLM or VAP be loaded on the file server.

- ❑ **Client-based** - Workstations perform all data processing locally. Client-based Btrieve is initialized automatically through the client-based WBTRCALL.DLL file.

LAN Support Center is fully compatible with both methods of access. *It is highly recommended that you use the server-based method, as this will improve the performance of LSC's database access by at least 50% and by as much as 500%.*

---

NOTES:

**a - General instructions for configuring the Btrieve NLM are provided in Appendix D. Refer to your Novell documentation for details on configuring Btrieve.**

**b - When running the Brequestor, BSPXCOM must also be loaded. Refer to your Novell documentation for details on loading this program.**

---

## LSC and Btrieve

LSC is fully compatible with both Btrieve methods discussed in the above section. LSC provides two batch files which configure the program to run with either server-based or client-based Btrieve. Upon installation, LSC is automatically configured to run with server-based Btrieve (i.e., the Btrieve NLM or VAP).

If you are using local Btrieve instead of Brequest, then you must run the USEBTR.BAT batch file before launching LSC. This batch file renames several files which instruct LSC to look for local Btrieve.

The USEBRQ.BAT batch file provided with LSC renames several files which instruct LSC to look for Brequest. (As mentioned above, this is the default configuration upon LSC installation.)

---

NOTE:

**If you are using local Btrieve, you must run the USEBTR.BAT file before launching LSC. If you use server-based Btrieve later, you must then run the USEBRQ.BAT file before launching LSC.**

---

Both batch files are copied into the LSC program directory upon installation.

- ❑ **USEBTR.BAT** - The batch file which renames certain files and instructs LSC to look for local Btrieve.

- ❑ **USEBRQ.BAT** - The batch file which renames certain files and instructs LSC to look for Brequest.

---

NOTE:

**The LSC batch files only need to be run when you have changed the Btrieve method being used. They do not need to be run each time you launch LSC.**

---

This ends the chapter on LAN Support Center installation and configuration. Refer to the next chapter for instructions on getting started with LSC.

## Chapter 3 *Getting Started*

Chapter 2 provided you with LSC installation and upgrade instructions. This chapter introduces LAN Support Center and presents a tutorial for the first-time LSC user.

---

### Introduction

#### What's in this Chapter

The following chart describes the sections in this chapter:

SECTION	DESCRIPTION
Planning Your LSC Database	Discusses the importance of planning the labels in your LSC database before using the LSC program.
The LSC Application Window	Provides instructions on entering and exiting LSC, selecting commands from the menu bar, using the tool bar as an alternative to the menu bar, and using LSC's on-line help facility.
Tutorial	Describes the tasks associated with LSC's main features: tailoring the database labels, defining the qualification lists, creating tickets, viewing the ticket database, and generating reports.

---

## Planning Your LSC Database

LSC's flexibility allows you to tailor the database to completely satisfy your requirements. LSC can be used in either an enterprise environment or internally within a company. For example, an enterprise environment may have clientele for which they need to track support requests. Using LSC internally may facilitate a company's management of any number of events: scheduled installations and upgrades, problem reporting, and even employee training classes.

The software is installed with a default database labeling scheme. Before you begin using LAN Support Center, you should take the time to review the default labels and determine whether or not they apply to your environment. The database label names should reflect the event(s) you intend to track.

The following examples illustrate how companies can tailor the LSC database labels for their individual purposes:

- ❑ An insurance company uses LSC to track insurance claims. They have changed the default 'Department' field label to 'Policy Number.' The 'Issue Type' field is used to reflect the type of insurance held by the insured. The 'Problem Type' and 'Product Category' fields are used to track the types of claims being made. The 'Cross Reference' field is used to maintain the insured's policy number for cross-referencing purposes.
- ❑ A software development company uses LSC to track new features to be incorporated into their product upgrades. They have changed the default 'First Name' field label to 'Product Name,' and the 'Last Name' field label to 'Version Number.' The 'Problem Type' and 'Product Category' field labels are changed to 'Feature' and 'Module' to track the new feature request and the module which must be modified. The 'Assigned to' field is used to indicate the programmer responsible for the new feature. The 'Priority' field reflects the urgency of the new feature.
- ❑ A manufacturing company uses LSC to track customer support calls. The 'Account ID' field is used to track the companies from which calls are being received. The 'First Name,' 'Last Name' and 'Phone' fields are used to track data regarding the contact person for the account. The 'Priority' field is used to reflect the urgency of the support call. (The URGENT priority displays in red in the View Tickets window so the staff determine quickly which tickets must be handled first.)

Defining the labels in your LSC database is an easy task. The entire database labeling scheme is defined in one straight-forward and intuitive dialog box. The steps for defining the LSC database are discussed in Chapter 5, “Setup and Administration.”

---

## The LSC Application Window

This section will familiarize you with the LSC application window. In addition to providing instructions for launching and exiting LSC, it also discusses the menu bar, tool bar, and help facility.

### Windows Terms

LAN Support Center should be used with a mouse. Several Windows terms regarding the use of the mouse are briefly defined below:

TERM	DESCRIPTION
Cancel Button	Choosing the Cancel button exits the current dialog box without saving any changes you made in this dialog box or executing a command you selected in this dialog box.
Choose	Click the left mouse button on an item to initiate an action. The item can be a menu, a command or a button. For example, “Choose the Administration menu.”
Click	Press the left mouse button once.
Double click	Press the left mouse button twice in quick succession.
Icon	A graphic representation of a Windows object. The object can be a program or a minimized window.
Point	Position the mouse with the tip of the screen pointer resting on the desired item.
Scroll	Use the scroll bars and buttons to move through a list of items.
Select	Mark or highlight an item by either clicking on it with the mouse or using key combinations. For example, “Select a ticket in the View Tickets window.”

---

**NOTE:**

**The remainder of this manual assumes that you are familiar with Windows. Refer to your Microsoft Windows manual for information on the fundamental operating conventions of the Windows environment.**

---

## Launching LSC

After successfully installing LAN Support Center, a McAfee group and an LSC program icon are created on your Windows desktop.

Use the following procedure to launch LSC.

1. If you are using LSC on a network, load the Novell Btrieve record manager.

Ignore this step if you are using LSC in a stand-alone environment.

Either server-based or client-based Btrieve can be used with LSC. Server-based Btrieve is strongly recommended due to its increased database access speed. If you are running server-based Btrieve, proceed to the next step.

---

**NOTE:**

**Upon installation, LSC is configured to run with Brequest. If you are running client-based Btrieve, LSC will automatically load the local Btrieve for you; however, you must configure the LSC files to run with local Btrieve. To do this, you must run the USEBTR.BAT file in the LSC program directory before launching LSC. For example, from within the LSC program directory, enter the following command: USEBTR.**

**Refer to “Btrieve Configuration Options” in Chapter 2 for details on the batch files provided with LSC.**

---

2. Run Windows, and double click on the LSC program icon.

The LSC program icon is shown in Figure 3-1.



Figure 3-1: LSC Program Icon

If you are using Novell's local Btrieve, a message displays recommending that you use Brequest for increased database access speed. This message will display when LSC cannot detect Brequest. It will also display when LSC is configured to run with client-based Btrieve (i.e., by running the USEBTR.BAT file). To disable the warning message under all circumstances, place a checkmark in the “Disable warning message when Brequest isn't running” field in the message window. (To re-enable the warning message, the LSC.INI file must be edited. Refer to page 50 for more information on the LSC.INI file parameters.)

Choose the OK button to continue the LSC program launch. The LSC Login dialog box displays, as in Figure 3-2.



Figure 3-2: Logging in to LSC

3. Enter your login initials and password, and choose the OK button.

After entering your login initials, press the <TAB> key to move the cursor to the Password field. Then enter your LSC password.

---

**NOTE:**

**The default LSC login initials and password are LSC and LSC. Changing the default password or changing the rights given to the default login is highly recommended. The procedures for defining Staff Membership and Security begin on .**

---

Upon choosing the OK button in the LSC Login dialog box, the LAN Support Center application window displays, as in Figure 3-3.

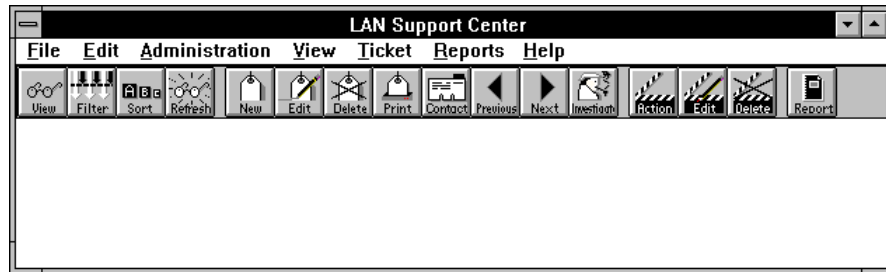


Figure 3-3: The LSC Application Window

---

**NOTE:**

**If previously you have launched LSC and saved the monitor configuration upon exiting, there may be open ticket windows in your LSC application window. Refer to the following section entitled “Exiting LSC.”**

---

The application window consists of the following items which are discussed in this section:

- ☐ The LSC menu bar

- ☐ The LSC tool bar
- ☐ Access to the LSC on-line help facility

## Exiting LSC

Use the following procedure to end an LSC session.

1. Choose the Exit command from the File menu.

A dialog box displays prompting you to confirm the exit action, as shown in Figure 3-4.



Figure 3-4: The LSC Exit Prompt

2. To save your monitor configuration, check the 'Save monitor configuration' option.

Checking this option will save the configuration of any windows that are currently open in your LSC application window. All open windows will be automatically restored upon starting your next LSC session. For example, if the View Tickets window and three additional Ticket windows are open when you exit LSC and enable this option, then all four windows will be opened the next time you launch LSC.

---

**NOTE:**

**The column widths in LSC's View Tickets window can be modified. Any modified column widths are saved upon exiting LSC regardless of your response to this exit prompt.**

---

3. Choose the OK button to close the LSC application.

## LSC Menu Bar

The LSC menu bar consists of the menu items shown in Figure 3-5. To choose a menu, point to the menu name and click the left mouse button.

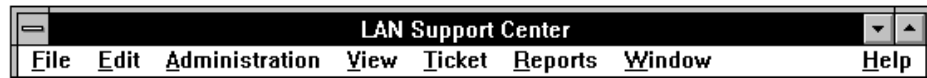


Figure 3-5: LSC Menu Bar

The general purpose of each menu item is defined below:

- ☐ **File Menu** - Lists commands for printing reports, configuring global print settings and exiting LSC.
- ☐ **Edit Menu** - Lists standard editing commands for use when creating and editing tickets.
- ☐ **Administration Menu** - Lists commands for setting up and maintaining the LSC environment. This includes staff setup and security, account setup, company setup, database labeling and administration, qualification list administration, custom view definitions and archiving/restoring tickets.
- ☐ **View Menu** - Lists commands for selecting and managing the ticket display of the View Tickets window.
- ☐ **Ticket Menu** - Lists commands for creating and managing tickets and their supporting information, as well as provides access to other McAfee LAN management products.
- ☐ **Reports Menu** - Provides access to pre-defined and custom LSC reports.
- ☐ **Window** - Lists commands for arranging the open windows in the LSC application area. (This menu only displays when there are open windows in the LSC application area.)
- ☐ **Help Menu** - Lists commands for accessing LSC's on-line Windows hypertext help facility.

---

NOTE:

**Holding down the left mouse button over a menu command causes the function of the command to display in the LSC title bar at the top of your screen.**

---

## LSC Tool Bar

LSC's tool bar buttons provide an alternative for accessing the most frequently used LSC functions. The tool bar is shown in Figure 3-6.

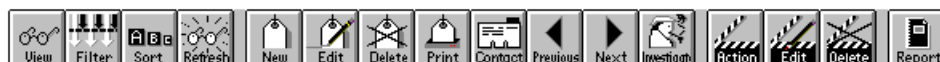


Figure 3-6: LSC Tool Bar

Instead of choosing commands from the drop-down menus, you can choose the tool bar buttons to perform the same tasks. For example, to create a new ticket, you can either choose the New Ticket command from the Ticket menu or you can choose the New tool bar button. Both actions display a new Ticket window.

The function of each tool bar button is described below:

- ☐ **View** - Displays the View Tickets window which allows you to view a list of related tickets and their corresponding actions.
- ☐ **Filter** - Displays the Filter Ticket List dialog box which enables you to specify criteria of the tickets to be listed in the View Tickets window.
- ☐ **Sort** - Displays the Select Sort Criteria dialog box in which you can define the sort order of the tickets listed in the View Tickets window.
- ☐ **Refresh** - Updates the display in the View Tickets window.
- ☐ **New** - Displays a new Ticket window in which ticket information is entered and maintained.
- ☐ **Edit** - Displays the Ticket window associated with the highlighted ticket in the View Tickets window.
- ☐ **Delete** - Deletes the ticket data associated with the active ticket or a highlighted ticket in the View Tickets window.
- ☐ **Print** - Prints the ticket data associated with the active ticket or a highlighted ticket in the View Tickets window.
- ☐ **Contact** - Displays the Contact Details dialog box associated with the active ticket or a highlighted ticket in the View Tickets window.
- ☐ **Previous** - Displays the Ticket window of the previous ticket listed in the View Tickets window.
- ☐ **Next** - Displays the Ticket window of the next ticket listed in the View Tickets window.
- ☐ **Investigate** - Displays the Smart-Launch McAfee Applications dialog box which provides access to other McAfee network management tools.
- ☐ **Action** - Displays the Add Action dialog box for entering an action entry to be associated with the active ticket or a highlighted ticket in the View Tickets window.
- ☐ **Edit** - Displays the Edit Action dialog box associated with the highlighted action entry in the View Tickets window.
- ☐ **Delete** - Deletes the highlighted action entry in the View Tickets window.
- ☐ **Report** - Provides access to the LSC reporting module.

## Using the Keyboard

LSC can be used with or without a mouse pointing device. To use LSC without a mouse, perform the following standard Windows keyboard actions to navigate throughout the program.

- ❑ Each menu item on the LSC menu bar has a keyboard mnemonic. To choose a menu, press the <ALT> key in combination with the underlined letter key. For example, press the <ALT><F> keys to choose the File menu and display its commands.
- ❑ Each command also has a keyboard mnemonic. Once the menu is displayed (i.e., “dropped down”), press the underlined letter of the command you want to choose. For example, from the File menu, press <R> to choose the Print Setup command and display the Print Setup dialog box. Once a menu is displayed, you can also use the <up/down arrow> keys to move the highlight to a desired command and then press <ENTER> to select the command.

All keyboard mnemonics for use with LSC are listed on the Quick Reference Card included in your LSC product package.

## Help Facility

LSC’s Help facility provides on-line assistance for using the LSC software. To get information quickly about an LSC feature or procedure, choose the Index command from the Help menu.

Choosing the Index command displays an index list of topics. Choose the topic for which you require assistance.

LSC’s Help window is written in a standard Windows hypertext format. This means that you can jump from one topic to another simply by choosing topic names from a list. Several buttons display across the top of the Help window, which allow you to both search for topics and view a list of the topics you have visited.

For detailed information on using a Windows Help facility, refer to your Windows documentation.

## LSC.INI File

When the LAN Support Center software is installed, the LSC.INI file is created and placed in the Windows directory of the local workstation. Each time the program is launched, the LSC.INI file is referenced for initialization and status information.

The file can consist of the following sections:

- ❑ **[ShowBrequeWarning]** - This section indicates the status of the Breque warning message which displays upon launching LSC when LSC does not detect the presence of the Btrieve NLM or VAP. This section contains an 'Init=' line which indicates whether or not the warning is disabled (i.e., 'Init=No' when warning is disabled; 'Init=Yes' when warning is enabled).

The warning message can be disabled by checking the "Disable message when Breque isn't running" field in the message window which displays when launching LSC. The only way to re-enable the warning message after it has been disabled is to edit the LSC.INI file and enter 'Init=Yes' in this section.

- ❑ **[ColumnWidth]** - This section lists the widths of all columns in the View Tickets window. Column numbers 1 to 11 represent the columns of the ticket list area in the window. Column numbers B1 to B6 represent the columns in the action list area of the window. Column widths can be changed either by modifying these numbers manually in the INI file or by using the mouse to drag the column separator line directly in the View Tickets window. (A column width of 0 indicates that the column is hidden.)

- ❑ **[ShowBanner]** - This section can be added manually to the INI file in order to disable the About LAN Support Center dialog box, which displays upon launching LSC. To disable the About dialog box at start-up time, enter the following:

```
[ShowBanner]
Init=No
```

- ❑ **[TicketScr\_#]** - There can be any number of these sections which indicate the parameters and status of any open LSC windows upon exiting the program. Ticket window number, field contents and position are indicated. (The "Ticket Number = -1" entry indicates the parameters of the View Tickets window.)

---

NOTE:

**To restore the default LSC.INI parameters, delete the LSC.INI file and re-launch the program. The LSC.INI file is re-created with its default settings.**

---

## Tutorial

This tutorial provides a general overview on the use of LSC. It assumes that the Blue Ribbon company uses LSC to track and maintain incoming support calls received from their customers. Blue Ribbon is a supplier of computer hardware.

The steps in this tutorial include the following:

1. Customizing the database labels to satisfy Blue Ribbon's help desk requirements.
2. Setting up accounts.
3. Defining the qualification list entries to facilitate consistency in the way the support staff enters ticket data.
4. Creating tickets to track incoming support calls.
5. Viewing the ticket database.
6. Generating reports which keep Blue Ribbon's management informed.

---

### NOTES:

**a - LSC must be installed before beginning the tutorial. If you have not already done so, please refer to Chapter 2 for installation instructions.**

**b - For instructions on launching LSC, please refer to page 44 in this chapter.**

**c - All LSC options and features mentioned in the tutorial are discussed in detail in the subsequent chapters of this manual.**

---

## Customizing the Database

Blue Ribbon has thoroughly reviewed their support environment. They have determined that several default LSC database labels should be changed in order to track required information and optimize the support provided to their customers.

Use the following procedure to modify the default LSC database labeling scheme. (The procedure is discussed in "Database Labeling" in Chapter 5.)

1. Choose the Label Options command from the Administration menu.

The Label Options dialog box displays, as in Figure 3-7. This dialog box shows the current labels for each field in the LSC ticket database.

The screenshot shows a 'Label Options' dialog box. It features a grid of input fields for various fields: Account ID, First Name, Last Name, Department, Phone, Assigned to, Issue Type, Priority, Problem Type, Product Category, Network Address, and Cross Reference. Each field has a small dropdown arrow next to it. Below these is a 'Status' section with two radio buttons: 'Opened' and 'Closed'. Each radio button is followed by a date and time picker, both showing '1994/02/22' and '11:28'. At the bottom of the dialog is a large text area labeled 'Problem Description'. At the very bottom are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Figure 3-7: Modifying the Database Labels

2. Customize the labels.

To change a label name, move the typing cursor into a field, delete the existing label and then type the new label name.

Blue Ribbon wants the label changes that are listed in the table below. Replace the old labels with the desired new labels.

Old Label	New Label
First Name	Acct #
Department	Company
Cross Reference	PO Number

NOTE:

**Press the <TAB> key to move the cursor quickly from field to field in the Label Options dialog box.**

3. Choose the OK button to save the label changes.

The Label Options dialog box closes. All Ticket windows will now reflect the new labels.

## Setting Up Accounts

LSC accounts can be defined to identify companies, persons or events for which tickets are created. Each account is assigned an ID. Account IDs provide a means of categorizing tickets. They also simplify data entry because information related to an existing account ID you selected from the drop-down list in the Ticket window is automatically entered.

The Blue Ribbon company wants to set up an LSC account for their customers who require support.

Use the following procedure to add a new LSC account for Blue Ribbon. (The procedure is discussed in “Accounts IDs” in Chapter 5.)

1. Choose the Setup Account command from the Administration menu.

The Setup Account dialog box displays, listing all accounts, as in Figure 3-8.

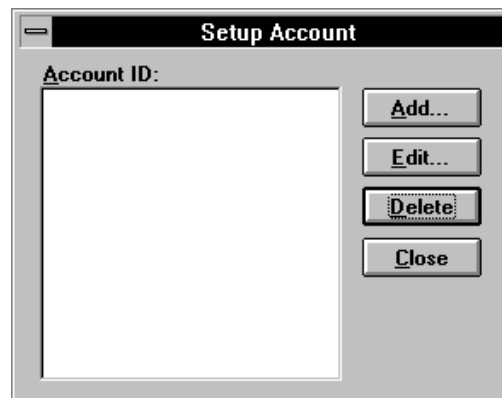


Figure 3-8: Setting Up Account IDs

2. To add a new account, choose the Add button.

The Add Account dialog box displays, as in Figure 3-9.

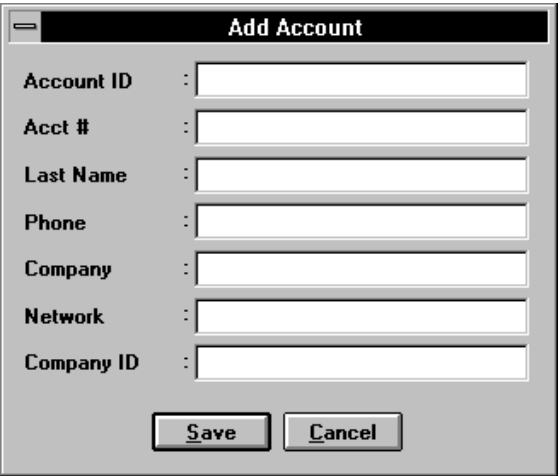
A screenshot of a Windows-style dialog box titled "Add Account". It contains eight text input fields, each preceded by a label and a colon. The labels are: "Account ID", "Acct #", "Last Name", "Phone", "Company", "Network", and "Company ID". The "Account ID" field is the first and is highlighted. At the bottom of the dialog box are two buttons: "Save" and "Cancel".

Figure 3-9: Defining Account ID Information

NOTE:

**The field names in this dialog box reflect the currently assigned labels. For example, the previous section of this tutorial listed steps for modifying the default labels (e.g., “First Name” was changed to “Acct #”).**

3. Enter the account information for the Blue Ribbon customer named COMPUTERS, ETC in the appropriate fields.

Enter the following information for the new LSC account:

Field	Entry	Description
Account ID	Computers, Etc.	This is the <i>unique</i> code or name to identify the new account. A maximum of 55 characters can be entered. This is the only required field in the Add Account dialog box.
Acct #	0001	This is the account number for the customer. A maximum of 20 characters can be entered. (Note that this was the default First Name field.)
Last Name	Smith	This is the last name of the person assigned to the account. A maximum of 20 characters can be entered.

Continued...

Field	Entry	Description
Phone	516-999-1212	This is the phone number of the person assigned to the account. A maximum of 27 digits can be entered.
Company ID	COMP	This is the unique code or name which identifies the contact details to be attached to all tickets that are assigned the account ID. A maximum of 40 characters can be entered.

---

NOTES:

**a - Entering a Company ID in the Add Account dialog box links the account data to the company data. Each time the account ID is entered in a Ticket window, all related company data is automatically entered in the ticket's Contact Details dialog box. Refer to the procedures in "Company IDs" in Chapter 5 for setting up Company IDs.**

**b - The Company and Network fields are left blank for the purposes of this tutorial.**

---

4. Choose the Save button.

The Add Account dialog box closes, and the "Computers, Etc." account ID is listed in the Setup Account dialog box.

5. Repeat steps 2-4 to add another account for the Blue Ribbon company.

Enter the following information for Blue Ribbon's "Paper Supply Company" account:

Field	Entry
Account ID	Paper Supply
Acct #	0002
Last Name	McGee
Phone	333-555-5544
Company ID	Paper Supply

## Defining Qualification List Entries

LSC's "qualification lists" act as reference lists to make data entry easier and also maintain consistency within the data files. Selecting an item from a drop-down list eliminates the time required to type the entry and ensures that only the intended entries are included in the list. The level of detail entered in the LSC qualification lists affects how well you can monitor and track your support efforts.

Blue Ribbon has decided that they want their support staff to *select* a Problem Type from a pre-defined list instead of manually typing in a new Problem Type for each new ticket.

---

### NOTE:

**The procedure below provides instructions for defining entries in the Problem Type qualification list. To prohibit a user from adding entries to a qualification list, define the appropriate security rights for the user. Refer to "Staff Membership and Security" in Chapter 5 for instructions on defining staff membership and security.**

---

Use the following procedure to define several entries for Blue Ribbon's Problem Type qualification list. (The procedure is discussed in "Qualification Lists" in Chapter 5.)

1. Choose the Qualification Lists command from the Administration menu.

The Qualification Lists dialog box displays, as in Figure 3-10.

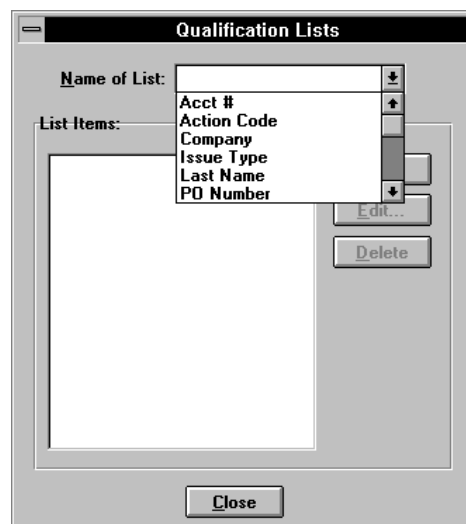


Figure 3-10: Displaying the Qualification List Names

2. Select the Problem Type database from the drop-down list associated with the Name of List field.

Choose the down arrow button next to the Name of List field to view all qualification list names, and click on Problem Type. When a qualification list is selected, all items defined for that list display in the List Items area. (If you have not yet defined any Problem Type entries, then the List Items area will remain empty.)

Figure 3-11 shows the Qualification List dialog box after the Problem Type list is chosen. Notice that items for the Problem Type qualification list can be assigned sub-categories (called “Product Categories”). For example, a SOFTWARE Problem Type might have several related Product Categories, including SPREADSHEETS and WORD PROCESSORS.

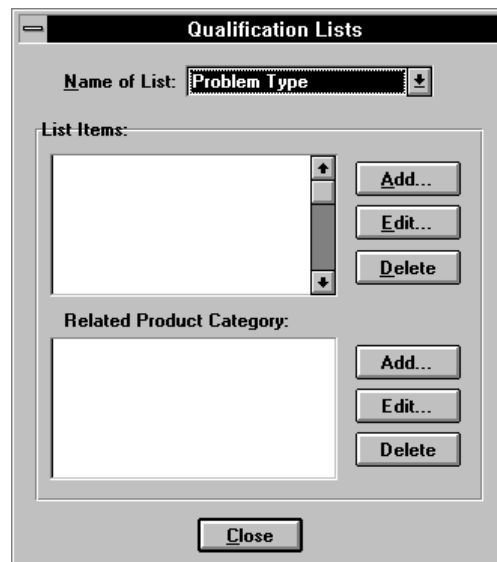


Figure 3-11: Choosing the Problem Type List

3. Define a Problem Type item by choosing the Add button to the right of the List Items area.

The Add Item dialog box displays prompting you to specify the name of the new item.

4. In the Add Item dialog box, type the new item name PRINTER and choose the OK button.

The 'PRINTER' item is added to the List Items area and defined as a Problem Type.

5. Define sub-categories for the PRINTER item by choosing the Add button to the right of the Related Product Category area.

An Add Related Item dialog box displays prompting you to specify the name of the new sub-category.

6. In the Add Related Item dialog box, type the new item name TONER and choose the OK button.
7. Repeat steps 3-6 to add the following Problem Types and related sub-categories for the Blue Ribbon company.

Before defining a sub-category, first highlight the item to which the sub-category should be related. For example, highlight the MODEM item in the List Items area, and then add the related items 1200 BAUD, 9600 BAUD and INTERNAL.

Problem Types	Related Categories
Drive	Floppy A Hard Drive
Modem	1200 Baud 9600 Baud Internal
Printer	Cartridge Drum Toner

8. Choose the Close button to close the Qualification Lists dialog box.

## Creating Tickets

Information related to every support request that is received by Blue Ribbon is entered as a “ticket.” Once created, a ticket is considered “opened” and can be assigned to a specific support staff member who is responsible for handling the ticket. All follow-up activity performed regarding the ticket is logged as ticket “action.” LSC’s ticket tracking capabilities enable Blue Ribbon to increase support response time, identify recurring support issues and monitor all incoming requests for support.

Use the following procedure to create a new ticket and enter action details. (The procedure is discussed in “Creating Tickets” in Chapter 6.)

1. Choose the New Ticket command from the Ticket menu, or choose the New tool bar button.

The Ticket window displays, as in Figure 3-12. A ticket number is automatically assigned by LSC. It is indicated in the title bar of the Ticket window and represents the LSC login user initials, year, month, day, hour, minute, and second of the ticket’s creation.

Figure 3-12: A New Ticket Window

The ticket is automatically assigned to the staff member who logged in to LSC (i.e., ‘Assigned to: LSC’ in Figure 3-12). The ticket is automatically assigned an ‘Urgent’ priority and its status is ‘Opened’ on the current date and time (i.e., the current system date and time).

2. From the Account ID field’s drop-down list, choose PAPER SUPPLY.

To display the drop-down list, click on the down arrow button associated with the Account ID field.

Notice that when PAPER SUPPLY is selected, all related information previously entered for the Paper Supply account is automatically entered in the Ticket window fields. For detailed information on the Ticket window fields, refer to “Creating Tickets” in Chapter 6.

3. Specify additional information for this ticket.

Enter the following information:

Field	Entry
Priority	Desired
Problem Type	Printer
Product Category	Cartridge
PO Number	123456
Problem Description	Wrong model

After you enter this information, your Ticket window should look similar to Figure 3-13.

The screenshot shows a 'Ticket #LSC940222134937' window. It contains several input fields with values: Account ID: PAPER SUPPLY, Acct #: 0002, Last Name: MCGEE, Company: (empty), Phone: 333-555-5544, Assigned to: LSC, Issue Type: (empty), Priority: DESIRED, Network Address: (empty), Problem Type: PRINTER, Product Category: CARTRIDGE, PO Number: 123456. The Status section has 'Opened on' selected with date 1994/02/22 and time 13:49. The Problem Description field contains 'Wrong model'. At the bottom are buttons for 'Add Action...', 'Save', and 'Cancel'.

Figure 3-13: A Completed Ticket Window

- 4. Choose the Add Action button in the Ticket window to enter activity performed for this ticket.

The Add Action dialog box displays, as in Figure 3-14.

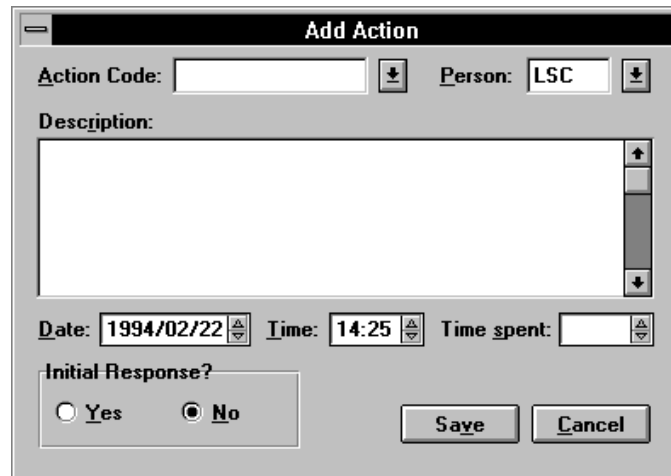
The image shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "Add Action". It contains several input fields: "Action Code" with a drop-down arrow, "Person" with a text box containing "LSC" and a drop-down arrow, "Description" with a large text area, "Date" with a date picker showing "1994/02/22", "Time" with a time picker showing "14:25", and "Time spent" with a time input field. At the bottom, there is a section for "Initial Response?" with radio buttons for "Yes" and "No" (where "No" is selected), and two buttons labeled "Save" and "Cancel".

Figure 3-14: Adding Ticket Action

5. Enter the action details.

Each field in the Add Action dialog box is defined and discussed in detail in the table in “Maintaining Ticket Information” in Chapter 6. Enter the following information regarding the initial action performed for this ticket:

Field	Entry
Action Code	TO_DO
Description	Send cartridge model #2400.
Time Spent	00:10
Initial Response	Yes

Note that the entry for the Action Code field can be selected from a drop-down list.

After you enter the action information, your Add Action dialog box should look similar to Figure 3-15.

Figure 3-15: A Completed Ticket Action Dialog Box

6. Choose the Save button in the Add Action dialog box to save the action information.

The Add Action dialog box closes.

7. Choose the Save button in the Ticket window to save the ticket.

The Ticket window closes.

8. For the purpose of the remaining tutorial steps, enter a second and third ticket having the following information:

Ticket #2:

Field	Entry
Account ID	Paper Supply
Account #	0002
Last Name	McGee
Phone	333-555-5544
Priority	Urgent
Problem Type	Modem
Product Category	1200 Baud
PO Number	15647

Problem Description	Modem not responding
---------------------	----------------------

Notice that LSC automatically completes many of the ticket fields based on the selected Account ID.

Ticket #3:

Field	Entry
Account ID	Computers, Etc.
Account #	0001
Last Name	Mitchell
Phone	516-999-3434
Priority	Urgent
Problem Type	Printer
Product Category	Cartridge
PO Number	98765
Problem Description	Needs instructions on adding toner.

Notice that in ticket #3 the information for the Computers, Etc. account has changed. The Last Name entry changed from Smith to Mitchell, and the account's Phone Number changed. Because the account information was modified, when you try to save the ticket, a message displays asking if you want to update the account information. Responding Yes to this message will cause all future tickets to reflect the new information. Responding No to this message will save the modified data with this ticket only and not affect any other tickets assigned to the account. For the purpose of this tutorial, choose the No button.

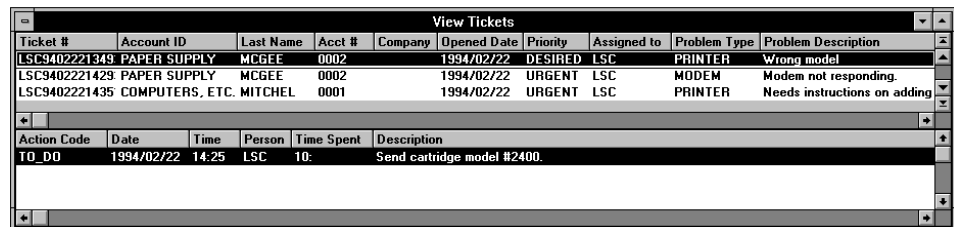
## Viewing the Ticket Database

LSC's View Tickets window lets the Blue Ribbon staff members view detailed ticket data at a glance. As discussed in "The View Tickets Window" in Chapter 4, the information that displays in the View Tickets window can be customized. Blue Ribbon is interested in viewing only those tickets that are assigned an 'Urgent' priority.

Use the following procedure to display the View Tickets window and define filter criteria.

1. Choose the View tool bar button to display the View Tickets window.

The View Tickets window displays, listing all tickets in your current ticket database. Your View Tickets window should look similar to Figure 3-16. Note that, by default, the tickets are listed in ascending ticket number order. Also, the URGENT ticket priorities and the TO\_DO actions display in red for easy identification.



Ticket #	Account ID	Last Name	Acct #	Company	Opened Date	Priority	Assigned to	Problem Type	Problem Description
LSC9402221349	PAPER SUPPLY	MC GEE	0002		1994/02/22	DESIRED	LSC	PRINTER	Wrong model
LSC9402221429	PAPER SUPPLY	MC GEE	0002		1994/02/22	URGENT	LSC	MODEM	Modem not responding.
LSC9402221435	COMPUTERS, ETC.	MITCHEL	0001		1994/02/22	URGENT	LSC	PRINTER	Needs instructions on adding

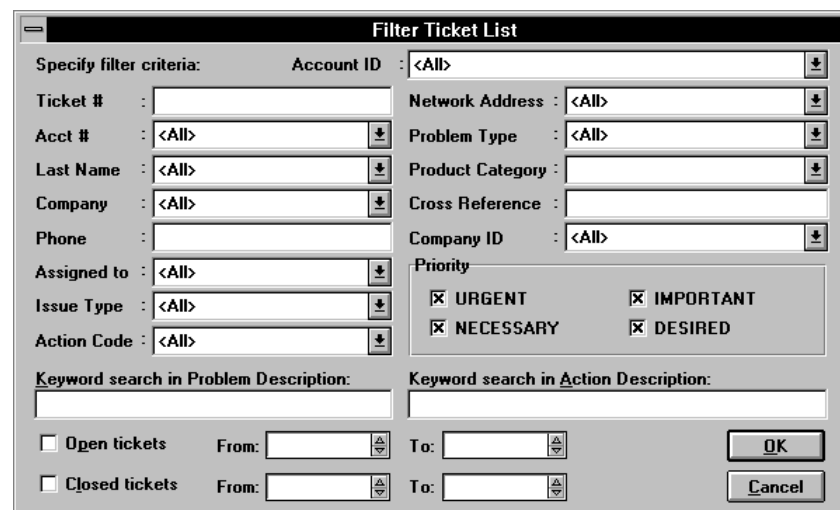
  

Action Code	Date	Time	Person	Time Spent	Description
TO_DO	1994/02/22	14:25	LSC	10:	Send cartridge model #2400.

Figure 3-16: The View Tickets Window List

2. To filter the tickets that display in the View Tickets window, choose the Filter tool bar button.

You can also choose the Filter command from the View menu. The Filter Ticket List dialog box displays, as in Figure 3-17.



**Filter Ticket List**

Specify filter criteria:

Account ID : <All>

Ticket # :

Acct # : <All>

Last Name : <All>

Company : <All>

Phone :

Assigned to : <All>

Issue Type : <All>

Action Code : <All>

Network Address : <All>

Problem Type : <All>

Product Category :

Cross Reference :

Company ID : <All>

Priority

☒ URGENT ☒ IMPORTANT

☒ NECESSARY ☒ DESIRED

Keyword search in Problem Description:

Keyword search in Action Description:

☐ Open tickets From:  To:

☐ Closed tickets From:  To:

OK Cancel

Figure 3-17: Filtering the View Ticket Window

3. Define the filter criteria so that only the 'Urgent' priority tickets will display in the View Tickets window.

Many of the fields in the Filter Ticket List dialog box are identical to the fields in the Ticket window.

Blue Ribbon is interested in viewing only those tickets that are assigned an 'Urgent' priority. Therefore, check only the URGENT Priority option. (The Priority check boxes toggle when selected. If an item has an 'x' in its check box, then select the item again to remove the 'x' and de-select the item.)

4. Choose the OK button.

The ticket information is filtered, and only those tickets that match the defined criteria will display in the View Tickets window (i.e., only the tickets that have an 'Urgent' priority).

## Generating Reports

LSC provides pre-defined reports which accumulate and present ticket data in an intuitive format. These reports represent reports frequently requested by support management and staff members. The pre-defined reports can be customized to accommodate individual reporting requirements. In addition, LSC includes the Crystal Reports software to be used for creating new reports for incorporation into LSC. Reporting is discussed in detail in Chapter 8 of this manual.

Blue Ribbon is interested in tracking the type of problems their customers are experiencing. The pre-defined "All Tickets by Problem Type" report provides Blue Ribbon with the information needed to identify the frequency and reason for each Problem Type. Blue Ribbon can use this information to eliminate the problem. For example, if the PRINTER problem type occurs frequently, then perhaps the type of printers being distributed by Blue Ribbon are faulty, or perhaps the customers need more training on printer installation.

Use the following procedure to generate the "All Tickets by Problem Type" report.

1. Choose the Reports tool bar button.

You can also choose the Choose Reports command from the Reports menu. The Choose Report dialog box displays, as in Figure 3-18.

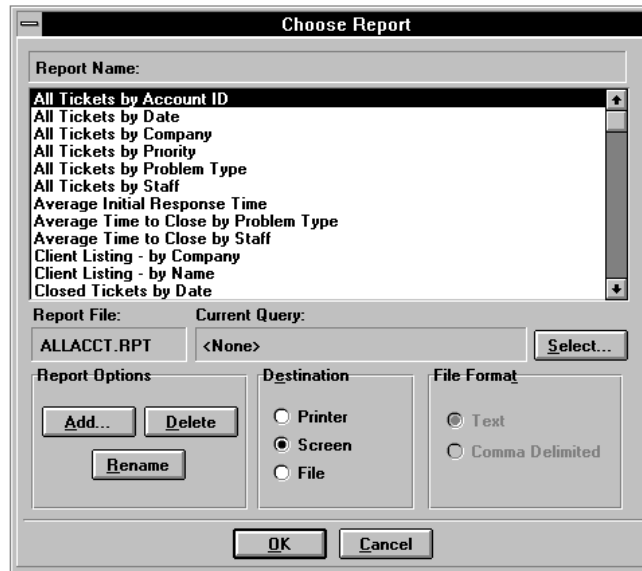


Figure 3-18: Choosing a Report to Generate

2. Select the “All Tickets by Problem Type” report.
3. In the Destination area of the Choose Report dialog box, select the Screen option.

Selecting this option sends the report to a window on your screen.

4. Choose the OK button to generate the report.

The All Tickets by Problem Type report displays in a window generated by Crystal Reports.

Your report window should look similar to Figure 3-19. The buttons at the top of the window from left to right can be chosen for page scroll to first page, previous page, next page, last page, stop scroll, page magnification and

route report to printer. (For detailed instructions on using the Crystal Reports software, refer to Part Two of this manual.)

All Tickets by Problem Type							
Date: 1994/02/22 Page # 1							
All Tickets by Problem Type							
Product Category	Ticket #	Closed	Name	Phone	Assigned to	Priority	
<b>MODEM</b>							
1200 BAUD	LSC940222142933	No	MCGEE, 0002	333-555-5544	LSC	URGENT	
Total: 1 ticket(s)							
<b>PRINTER</b>							
CARTRIDGE	LSC940222134937	No	MCGEE, 0002	333-555-5544	LSC	DESIRED	
CARTRIDGE	LSC940222143519	No	MITCHEL, 0001	518-999-3434	LSC	URGENT	
Total: 2 ticket(s)							

Figure 3-19: A Report Window

5. Close the report window by double clicking on the system menu button.

The system menu button is shaped like a hyphen ( - ) and is located in the upper left corner of the report window, as shown in Figure 3-19.

This ends the LSC tutorial. There are many other features and capabilities that were not covered. Please refer to Part One of this manual to become familiar with the LSC features.

## Chapter 4 Ticket Data Display

Chapter 3 provided an introduction to LAN Support Center. This chapter provides an overview of the various windows which display the ticket data maintained by LSC.

### Introduction

The following windows display the ticket information maintained by LAN Support Center:

- ❑ **The View Tickets window** offers a general view of the tickets in the LSC database. Each LSC user can customize the information displayed in this window in order to meet his or her ticket viewing requirements.
- ❑ **The Ticket window** displays the details of an individual ticket. New tickets are created and existing ticket information is edited and maintained from within this window.

The View Tickets window and the Ticket window are introduced and discussed in detail in this chapter.

### What's in this Chapter

The following chart describes the sections in this chapter:

SECTION	DESCRIPTION
The View Tickets Window	Provides an overview of the View Tickets window. Discusses the window layout, scrolling procedures and modifying the window contents.

The Ticket Window	Provides an overview of the Ticket window. Discusses the ticket numbering scheme, modifying the field labels, viewing multiple Ticket windows and associated ticket information.
-------------------	--

## The View Tickets Window

The View Tickets window provides access to an entire database of tickets. The View Tickets window is displayed in any of the following ways:

- ☐ Choose the View tool bar button to display a list of the open/active tickets in your LSC database.
- ☐ Choose the Current Tickets command from the View menu to display a list of the open/active tickets in your LSC database.
- ☐ Choose the Historical Tickets command from the View menu to display a list of tickets that have been archived into an historical database file.

As illustrated in Figure 4-1, ticket information and related ticket actions can be viewed at a glance.

View Tickets							
Ticket #	Account ID	Last Name	First Name	Department	Opened Date	Closed Date	Priority
GKG940207164654	BLUE RIBBON #1	JONES	MATTHEW	TRAINING	1994/02/07		URGENT
GKG940207164745	BLUE RIBBON #1	JONES	MATTHEW	SALES	1994/02/07		DESIRED
GKG940208105143	JONES-SMITH	LEECH	WENDY	ADMINISTRATION	1994/02/08		NECESSARY
KEL931221105634	BLUE RIBBON #1	JONES	MATTHEW	SALES	1993/12/21	1994/01/04	URGENT
KEL931221140005	BLUE RIBBON #1	JONES	MATTHEW	SALES	1993/12/21	1994/01/20	DESIRED
Action Code	Date	Time	Person	Time Spent	Description		
TELEPHONED	1994/02/07	16:48	GKG		Cannot rebuild database.		

Figure 4-1: Viewing a List of Tickets

## View Tickets Window Layout

There are two list boxes in the View Tickets window.

- ☐ **Ticket List** - The upper area of this window lists the tickets in the LSC database. Double clicking on a ticket item displays the Ticket window in which the ticket's information can be modified.

The information displayed in this list can be modified in the following ways:

- **Define filter criteria to list only the tickets that match the filter criteria.** For example, choose the Filter tool bar button and check only the Urgent priority to view only those tickets that have been categorized as Urgent. Refer to “Filtering the View Tickets Window Display” in Chapter 7 for detailed instructions.
  - **Define another sort method to list the tickets according to the new sort criteria.** For example, choose the Sort tool bar button and select Last Name as the primary sort method to view all tickets ordered alphabetically according to the tickets’ Last Name field. Refer to “Sorting the View Tickets Window Display” in Chapter 7 for detailed instructions.
  - **View a group of tickets in an historical database.** Choose the Historical Tickets command from the View menu to access a list of tickets that have been archived. Refer to “Ticket Databases” in Chapter 7 for detailed instructions.
  - **Resize the columns to modify their width.** By positioning the mouse pointer directly over a column separator line, the mouse cursor changes to a double-sided arrow. Holding down the left mouse button and moving the mouse to the left or right will decrease or increase the column size. If a user does not require a certain column of information, then the column can be completely hidden using this procedure. The modified column widths are saved even when you exit LSC!
- ☐ **Action List** - The lower area of this window lists the actions associated with the ticket that is highlighted in the ticket list described above. Double clicking on an action item displays the Edit Action dialog box in which the action details can be modified.

## Scrolling Within the View Tickets Window

Horizontal and vertical scroll bars are available in both areas of the View Tickets window. Both areas of the window contain scroll bar buttons. The Ticket List area contains up/down scroll bar buttons which allow you to scroll through the ticket list, as shown in Figure 4-2. The Action List area contains left/right scroll bar buttons and a thumb button, all which allow you to view the action information.



Figure 4-2: Standard Scroll Bars

To facilitate movement within a large number of tickets, the Ticket List area provides additional vertical scroll bar buttons, as shown in Figure 4-3.



Figure 4-3: Large List Handlers

- ☐ Choose the top scroll up button to display the beginning of the ticket list.
- ☐ Choose the bottom scroll down button to display the end of the ticket list.
- ☐ Choose the lower scroll up button to page up through the ticket list (i.e., move up several tickets as opposed to one ticket item at a time).
- ☐ Choose the top scroll down button to page down through the ticket list.

---

## The Ticket Window

The Ticket window is used for creating or editing a ticket. The information in the Ticket window is specific to the ticket being created or edited. The Ticket window is displayed in any of the following ways:

- ☐ Choose the New Ticket tool bar button to enter new ticket data.
- ☐ Choose the New Ticket command from the Ticket menu to enter new ticket data.
- ☐ Highlight a ticket in the View Tickets window, and choose the Edit Ticket tool bar button to edit the ticket's existing data.
- ☐ Highlight a ticket in the View Tickets window, and choose the Edit Ticket command from the Ticket menu to edit the ticket's existing data.
- ☐ Double click on a ticket in the View Tickets window to edit the ticket's existing data.

As illustrated in Figure 4-4, a Ticket window contains the fields regarding a specific "event" (e.g., a support call).

The screenshot shows a window titled "Ticket #KEL931221143151". The form contains the following fields and values:

Account ID	Mountain Consulting		
First Name	George	Network Address	
Last Name	Smythe	Problem Type	PRINTER
Department	MARKETING	Product Category	CARTRIDGE
Phone	1-800-GET-HELP		
Assigned to	KEL	Cross Reference	
Issue Type		Status: <input checked="" type="radio"/> Opened on: 1994/02/02 14:31 <input type="radio"/> Closed on:	
Priority	URGENT		
Problem Description Sent wrong model number. Issued RMA # 2334.			

At the bottom are three buttons: "Add Action...", "Save", and "Cancel".

Figure 4-4: The Ticket Window

## The Ticket Numbering Scheme

When a new ticket is created, LSC automatically assigns a number to the ticket. The ticket number displays in the title bar of the Ticket window and cannot be modified by the LSC user.

The ticket number is generated in the format IIIYYMMDDHHMMSS, which is determined by the following information:

- III = The LSC login staff initials of the user who created the ticket. This can be up to three characters.
- YY = The year in which the ticket was created.
- MM = The month in which the ticket was created (from 01 to 12).
- DD = The day in which the ticket was created (from 01 to 31).
- HH = The hour in which the ticket was created (from 00 to 23).
- MM = The minute in which the ticket was created (from 00 to 59).
- SS = The second in which the ticket was created (from 00 to 59).

For example, the ticket number in Figure 4-4 is KEL931221143151 which indicates that the ticket was created on December 21, 1993 at 2:31:51 in the afternoon by the staff member who has the initials KEL.

## Assigning Account IDs

The Ticket window has an Account ID field in which an identifying code or name can be entered to indicate that the ticket “belongs” to a specific account. An account can be any entity for which a ticket is created. For example, accounts may be created for each customer (“Mary Jones”) or for each organization (“Blue Ribbon Company”). Accounts are set up using the procedures in “Accounts IDs” in Chapter 5.

The benefits of assigning account IDs to tickets are as follows:

- ☐ Assigning account IDs to tickets enables you to categorize the tickets according to an account. For example, it might be helpful to list all tickets that were created for the Blue Ribbon company. By doing so, you can determine the types of problems that Blue Ribbon is having and develop new procedures which eliminate the problems.
- ☐ Assigning account IDs to tickets facilitates data entry. When an existing account ID is selected from the drop-down list in the Ticket window, the account information is automatically entered. The fields associated with Account ID are First Name, Last Name, Phone, Department, Network Address and Company ID.

## Modifying the Ticket Window Labels

The fields in the Ticket window represent the individual LSC databases. For example, LSC maintains a database of all First Names entered in the tickets. The field labels can be modified to reflect the individual requirements of an organization. Using the label “PO Number” in place of “Cross Reference” might be more meaningful to a support environment if incoming support calls correspond to a purchase order number.

The procedures for modifying database labels are in “Database Labeling” in Chapter 5.

## Viewing Multiple Ticket Windows

Multiple Ticket windows can be open simultaneously. This allows the user to compare information being maintained across any number of tickets. Additionally, when multiple Ticket windows are open, the Edit menu commands (i.e., Cut, Copy, Paste) facilitate cross-referencing and sharing information among tickets. The

process of creating a new ticket is simplified by displaying any number of existing tickets having similar information.

For example, assume that there are several known problems that your staff should be aware of while providing support. As a result, you have created corresponding “BULLETIN” tickets which outline the known problems and list their solutions (e.g., for each Bulletin ticket, Problem Type=BULLETIN and Problem Category=SPREADSHEET:LOTUS). By keeping all Bulletin Ticket windows open, your support staff can quickly reference established solutions and provide support. Additionally, the Ticket window Cross Reference field can be used to establish a relationship between any number of tickets. This is discussed in “Maintaining Ticket Information” in Chapter 6.

---

**HINTS:**

- a - When multiple Ticket windows are open or iconized, use the Window menu commands to arrange them within the LSC application window.**
  - b - To cycle through the open Ticket windows, press the <CTRL><F6> keys or <CTRL><TAB> keys.**
  - c - To use the keyboard to minimize or close the active Ticket window, press the <ALT><hyphen> keys to open the Control menu and then choose the desired command. (The hyphen character is ‘-’.)**
- 

## Associated Ticket Information

In addition to the information that displays in the Ticket window, the following items can be associated with a ticket:

- ☐ **Action entries** - These entries represent the actions performed in response to a ticket. For example, if LSC is used to track training sessions, then one type of action entry might be called PREPARE which describes the preparation performed before the session. In addition to tracking the efforts of your support staff, the action entries can be used to accumulate billable time spent on a ticket. The procedures for creating and maintaining action entries are discussed in “Maintaining Ticket Information” in Chapter 6.
- ☐ **Company IDs and Contact details** - Contact information includes the company, address, and phone number of the person to contact regarding the ticket. For example, if LSC is used to track requests for support, then the contact details should be used to maintain information for the caller requesting support. Contact details can be associated with a company ID. When an existing company ID is selected from the drop-down list in

the Contact Details dialog box, the contact information is automatically entered.

This concludes the overview of LSC's ticket data display. The procedures for setting up company IDs are discussed in "Company IDs" in Chapter 5. The procedures for maintaining contact details are discussed in "Maintaining Ticket Information" in Chapter 6. The instructions for modifying the LSC ticket views are discussed throughout Chapter 7, "Viewing Ticket Data."

## *Chapter 5 Setup and Administration*

---

The previous chapter provided an overview on accessing LSC ticket data. This chapter discusses the setup and administration of the LSC parameters.

---

### **Introduction**

The LAN Support Center setup and administrative procedures require minimal effort on the part of the LSC administrator. For those aspects of the system which do need to be maintained, the procedures for doing so are simple and intuitive.

LSC setup and administrative procedures include the following:

- ☐ Assigning support staff logins and granting rights
- ☐ Setting up account IDs
- ☐ Setting up company IDs
- ☐ Defining the database labeling scheme
- ☐ Maintaining qualification lists
- ☐ Defining the types of problems to be tracked
- ☐ Archiving and restoring tickets
- ☐ Printer setup and administration

---

NOTES:

**a - LSC can be used immediately after installation.**

**b - There should be one LSC administrator primarily responsible for the features discussed in this chapter.**

---

## What's in this Chapter

The following chart describes the sections in this chapter:

SECTION	DESCRIPTION
Database Labeling	Provides procedures for customizing the LSC database labels to satisfy the requirements of your support environment.
Staff Membership and Security	Provides procedures for assigning LSC login names, passwords and access rights.
Account IDs	Provides procedures for setting up LSC accounts. Also provides procedures for editing and deleting account information.
Company IDs	Provides procedures for setting up LSC company data. Also provides procedures for editing and deleting company information.
Qualification Lists	Provides a description of the LSC qualification databases. Also provides procedures for adding, modifying and deleting items in any of the database lists.
Archiving and Restoring Tickets	Provides procedures for moving a group of selected tickets into an historical database. Also provides procedures for restoring archived tickets into the current database.
Printer Setup and Administration	Provides procedures for defining the printer on which you want to generate LSC reports and for setting print parameters.

---

## Database Labeling

The LSC database labeling scheme greatly affects the way support data is entered, retrieved and compiled during report generation. The database labels are used to categorize the ticket information, and as a result, database planning and labeling becomes an important factor in your installation and use of LSC.

Planning the LSC database labels should begin with a review of your organization's current support procedures. For example, after the evaluation, you might discover that a label or field called COMPANY is more applicable than the default label called DEPARTMENT. Further, you might find that SITE should be used in place of the FIRST NAME field.

---

NOTES:

**a - Before modifying the database labels, review several of the pre-defined reports supplied with LSC. Reviewing the reports will help you determine if your organization requires database label changes. Chapter 8 of this manual presents the procedures for generating and customizing LSC reports. Also refer to the section entitled "Sample Reports" in Chapter 8 to view several illustrations of the pre-defined LSC reports.**

**b - Any changes made to the database labels are also reflected in the reports.**

LSC provides a default labeling scheme which can either be tailored to satisfy the requirements of your support environment or can be used without any modification.

Figure 5-1 illustrates LSC's default database labels which serve as categories of information under which ticket data is stored.

Figure 5-1: The Default Database Labels

After careful planning, the labels in the Label Options dialog box can be modified to reflect your support tracking requirements.

---

**NOTES:**

- a - The fields which have a down arrow button represent LSC “qualification lists” (discussed in detail on page 97). Changing the name of one of these fields also changes the name of the associated qualification list.**
  - b - In all qualification lists except Priority, entries can be added, removed or modified. (Even if the Priority label is changed, the pre-defined Priority-type names can only be edited.)**
- 

## Customizing Database Labels

Use the following procedure to customize the ticket label names.

1. Choose the Label Options command from the Administration menu.

The Label Options dialog box displays, showing the currently defined labels for each field in the LSC ticket database, as shown in Figure 5-2.

The 'Label Options' dialog box contains the following fields and controls:

- Account ID**: Text input field.
- First Name**: Text input field.
- Last Name**: Text input field.
- Department**: Text input field.
- Phone**: Text input field.
- Assigned to**: Text input field.
- Issue Type**: Text input field.
- Priority**: Text input field.
- Problem Type**: Text input field.
- Product Category**: Text input field.
- Network Address**: Text input field.
- Cross Reference**: Text input field.
- Status**:
  - ☐ **Opened**: Date (1994/02/08) and Time (20:31) pickers.
  - ☐ **Closed**: Date (1994/02/08) and Time (20:31) pickers.
- Problem Description**: Large text area with scrollbars.
- Buttons**: OK and Cancel buttons at the bottom.

Figure 5-2: The Current Database Labels

2. Make the appropriate changes to the labels.

To change a label name, move the typing cursor into a field, delete the existing label and then type the new label name.

---

#### NOTES ON MODIFYING LABELS:

**a - Press the <TAB> key to move the cursor quickly from field to field in the Label Options dialog box.**

**b - Labels can consist of any typed characters. The new label name must fit in the field space provided (i.e., the fields do not scroll).**

**c - The following fields are linked to the Account ID field: First Name, Last Name, Phone, Department and Network Address. For example, assume that the following information is entered for a new ticket: Account ID=BLUE RIBBON, First Name=MARY, Last Name=JONES, and Department=SALES. In this case, the next time that BLUE RIBBON is entered into the Account ID field, then MARY, JONES and SALES will automatically display in the First Name, Last Name and Department fields, respectively. These fields remain linked even if their label names are changed. (Accounts are set up using the procedures on page 88.)**

---

---

**d - The Product Category field is a sub-field of Problem Type. For example, a Problem Type might be entered as “Software.” Related Product Categories might then be entered as “Spreadsheets” and “Word Processors.” These fields remain linked even if their label names are changed. (Product Categories are defined using the procedures on page 103.)**

---

3. Choose the OK button to save the changes.

The Label Options dialog box closes, and all Ticket windows will reflect the new labels.

---

**NOTE:**

**Labels can be modified after issuing and saving tickets; however, all ticket data reflects the database labels that are present when the ticket is saved. For example, if a ticket is saved with JOHN in the First Name field and the First Name label is later changed to Company, then the same ticket will have JOHN in the new Company field.**

---



---

## Staff Membership and Security

Every LSC support staff user must be assigned a unique ID and password which defines the LSC activities he or she can perform. The unique ID also determines the first three characters of all tickets created by the user. (For more information on the ticket numbering scheme, refer to “The Ticket Window” in Chapter 4.)

Before LSC is launched, the user must provide a valid user name and password combination. When a user successfully logs into LSC, the LSC application window displays.

Defining LSC staff users and assigning unique IDs and passwords is an on-going action performed by the LSC administrator. In addition to adding and removing users, the LSC administrator is responsible for granting user rights and modifying those rights if the users’ support responsibilities change.

---

**NOTES:**

**a - The commands available from the Administration menu are enabled only for those users who are granted the appropriate rights. For example, if Dan is not given the right to Setup Staff, then the Setup Staff command on Dan’s Administration menu is disabled.**

**b - Changing the default LSC login name and password (i.e., LSC and LSC) is highly recommended.**

---

## Adding Support Staff

Use the following procedure to add new support staff members and define their rights within the LSC environment.

1. Choose the Setup Staff command from the Administration menu.

The Setup Staff dialog box displays listing the initials of the defined LSC staff members, as shown in Figure 5-3.

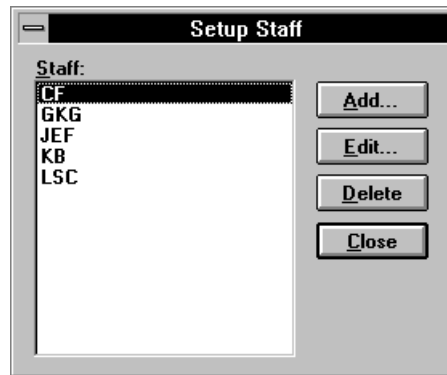


Figure 5-3: The LSC Staff List

2. To add a new staff member, choose the Add button.

The Add Staff dialog box displays, as in Figure 5-4.

Qualification Lists		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> First Name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Issue Type	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Problem Type
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Last Name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Priority	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Product Category
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Department	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Network Address	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Action Code

Figure 5-4: Adding a New Staff Member

3. Enter the new staff member's information.

Enter the following information for the new LSC user:

- ☐ **Staff Initials** - Enter a *unique* code for the new user's LSC login name. A maximum of 3 characters can be entered.
- ☐ **Full Name** - In the field space provided, enter the new user's full name. This is an optional field.
- ☐ **Enter New Password** - Enter the new user's 8 character password. This is an optional field. The typed information displays as asterisks for password protection.
- ☐ **Verify New Password** - Verify the 8 character password entered in the above field by re-entering the new user's password. This must *exactly* match the password entered in the Enter New Password field. The typed information displays as asterisks for password protection.
- ☐ **Rights Granted For Qualification Lists** - Place a checkmark next to each qualification list the user is able to modify. For example, if a new user is to be restricted from modifying any of the qualification lists, then do not check any of the qualification list items in the Add Staff dialog box.

---

NOTE:

**When a user is restricted from modifying a qualification list, the user is unable to add/edit entries via the Qualification Lists dialog box or the Ticket window. For example, if Dan is not given the right to modify the Problem Type list, then he cannot edit the Problem Type qualification list entries (via the Administration/Qualification Lists command). Dan also cannot enter a new problem type into the corresponding field of a Ticket window. In this case, Dan can only select existing entries from the Problem Type field drop-down list.**

---

- ☐ **Rights Granted For Actions** - Place a checkmark next to each LSC action the user is allowed to perform. Rights for the Edit Tickets and Delete Actions options can be further defined to include one of the sub-categories. For example, a new user might be allowed to edit only the tickets assigned to him or her.

---

NOTES:

**a - Having only one "LSC Administrator" who is given the right to Setup Staff and Define Label Options is recommended.**

**b - By default, all rights are enabled when adding a new user.**

---

4. Choose the OK button.

The Add Staff dialog box closes, and the initials entered for the new staff member are listed in the Setup Staff dialog box.

## Maintaining Support Staff

As staff positions and responsibilities change, the LSC support staff information must be maintained. For example, assume that Mary receives a promotion to Support Manager. As a result of Mary's promotion, her LSC rights may be modified to allow for ticket deletion, report generation and archiving/restoring ticket databases.

Use the following procedure to delete or edit an existing support staff member's information.

1. Choose the Setup Staff command from the Administration menu.

The Setup Staff dialog box displays, listing the initials of the defined LSC staff members.

2. To delete a staff member, highlight the staff member's name in the Setup Staff dialog box and choose the Delete button.

The message "Delete the Staff selected?" displays. Choose the Yes button to delete the staff member.

3. To edit a staff member's information, highlight the staff member's name in the Setup Staff dialog box and choose the Edit button.

The Edit Staff dialog box displays, as in Figure 5-5.

Figure 5-5: Editing Staff Member Information

4. Edit the staff member's information.

This box is identical in form and usage to the Add Staff dialog box with the exception that the operations are performed for an existing LSC user rather than for creating a new user.

5. Choose the OK button.

The Edit Staff dialog box closes.

---

## Accounts IDs

LSC accounts can be defined to identify companies, persons or events for which tickets are created. The benefits of assigning account IDs to tickets are as follows:

- ❑ **Assigning account IDs to tickets enables you to categorize the tickets according to an account.** The Ticket window has an Account ID field in which the account's identifying code or name can be entered to indicate that the ticket "belongs" to a specific account. For example, it might be helpful to list all tickets that were created for the Blue Ribbon company. By doing so, you can determine the types of problems that Blue Ribbon is having and incorporate new procedures to eliminate the problems.

- ❑ **Assigning account IDs to tickets facilitates data entry.** When an existing account ID is selected from the drop-down list in the Ticket window, the related account information is automatically entered.  
Related account information includes an Account ID, First Name, Last Name, Phone, Department, Network Address and Company ID.

---

NOTE:

**Assigning a Company ID to the account links the company data with the account data. Each time an account ID is entered on a ticket, the ticket's contact details information is automatically populated with the company data.**

---

Accounts are set up and maintained using the procedures in this section.

## Adding Accounts

Use the following procedure to add new LSC accounts.

1. Choose the Setup Account command from the Administration menu.

The Setup Account dialog box displays listing all accounts, as in Figure 5-6.

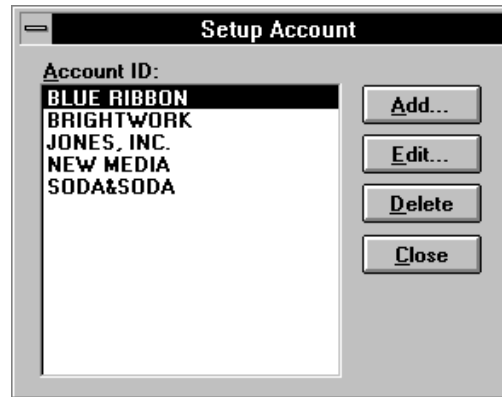


Figure 5-6: A List of LSC Accounts

2. To add a new account, choose the Add button.

The Add Account dialog box displays, as in Figure 5-7.

The image shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "Add Account". It contains seven input fields, each preceded by a label and a colon: "Account ID", "First Name", "Last Name", "Phone", "Department", "Network", and "Company ID". At the bottom of the dialog box are two buttons: "Save" and "Cancel".

Figure 5-7: Adding a New Account

3. Enter the new account information.

Enter the following information for the new LSC account:

- ☐ **Account ID** - Enter a *unique* code or name to identify the new account. A maximum of 55 characters can be entered. For example, enter “Blue Ribbon” to identify the Blue Ribbon company account, or enter #3456 to identify the customer having account #3456. This is the only required field in the Add Account dialog box.
- ☐ **First Name** - Enter the first name of the person assigned to the account. A maximum of 20 characters can be entered.
- ☐ **Last Name** - Enter the last name of the person assigned to the account. A maximum of 20 characters can be entered.
- ☐ **Phone** - Enter the phone number of the person assigned to the account. A maximum of 27 digits can be entered.
- ☐ **Department** - Enter the department in which the person assigned to the account belongs. A maximum of 30 characters can be entered.
- ☐ **Network** - Enter the network address of the person assigned to the account. A maximum of 20 digits can be entered in the following format: 8 digits:12 digits (the colon is required).
- ☐ **Company ID** - Enter the unique code or name which identifies the contact details to be attached to all tickets that are assigned the account ID. A maximum of 40 characters can be entered.

---

NOTES ON ENTERING ACCOUNT INFORMATION:

**a - Entering a company ID in the Add Account dialog box links the account data to the company data. Each time the account ID is entered in a Ticket window, all related company data is automatically entered in the ticket's Contact Details dialog box. Refer to the procedures on page 93 for setting up Company IDs.**

**b - If you have changed the database labels for First Name, Last Name, Phone, Department or Network, then the changed labels will be reflected in the Add Account dialog box.**

**c - The information entered in the First Name, Last Name, Phone, Department and Network fields is only added to the corresponding qualification list when the account is used in a ticket. For example, if the “ABC” account is set up with “Smith” in the Last Name field, then Smith is only added to the Last Name qualification list when a ticket is created for account ABC.**

---

4. Choose the Save button.

The Add Account dialog box closes, and the new account ID is listed in the Setup Account dialog box.

## Maintaining Accounts

Use the following procedure to delete or modify the information for an existing account.

---

**NOTE:**

**Account ID data can also be modified from within the Ticket window. When account information is changed in the Ticket window and the ticket is then saved, a prompt displays giving you the option to update the account information.**

---

1. Choose the Setup Account command from the Administration menu.  
The Setup Account dialog box displays listing all accounts.
2. To delete an account, highlight the account name in the Setup Account dialog box and choose the Delete button.  
The message “Do you wish to delete this entry?” displays. Choose the Yes button to delete the account.
3. To edit account information, highlight the account name in the Setup Account dialog box and choose the Edit button.

The Edit Account dialog box displays, as in Figure 5-8.



<b>Edit Account</b>	
Account ID	: SODA&SODA
First Name	: JANICE
Last Name	: WYCOFF
Phone	: 222-999-2345
Department	: TRAINING
Network	:
Company ID	: SODA
<input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

Figure 5-8: Editing Account Information

4. Edit the account information.

This box is identical in form and usage to the Add Account dialog box with the exception that the operations are performed for an existing LSC account rather than for creating a new account.

5. Choose the Save button.

The Edit Account dialog box closes.

---

## Company IDs

Company IDs are unique names which identify the contact details of a company. Details include the company's address, fax number and Email information.

Assigning company IDs facilitates data entry in the Contact Details dialog box. When an existing company ID is selected from the drop-down list, the related company information is automatically entered. Furthermore, a Company ID can be linked to an Account ID (refer to page 88). Each time an account ID is entered in a Ticket window, the ticket's contact details information is automatically populated with the company data.

Company IDs are set up and maintained using the procedures in this section.

## Adding Company IDs

Use the following procedure to add new company IDs.

1. Choose the Setup Company command from the Administration menu.

The Setup Company dialog box displays, listing all companies that have been assigned IDs, as in Figure 5-9.

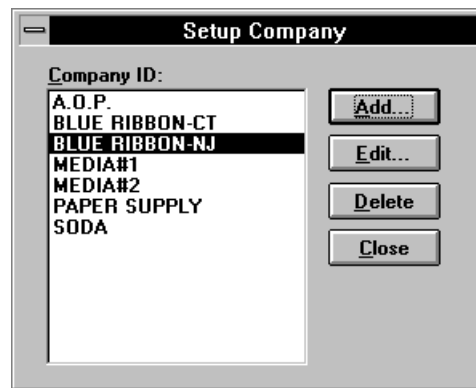


Figure 5-9: A List of LSC Company IDs

2. To add a new company ID, choose the Add button.

The Add New Company dialog box displays, as in Figure 5-10.

A screenshot of a Windows-style dialog box titled "Add New Company". The dialog box has a standard title bar with a minimize button. Inside, there are several text input fields with labels to their left. The labels are: "Company ID:", "Address Line 1:", "Address Line 2:", "City:", "State:", "Zip:", "Country:", "Fax:", and "Email:". The input fields contain the following text: "BLUE RIBBON-TX", "P.O. 393", "125 STARVIEW AVENUE", "BRIDGETOWN", "NY", "11999", "USA", and two empty fields for "Fax:" and "Email:". At the bottom of the dialog box, there are two buttons: "Save" and "Cancel".

Figure 5-10: Adding a New Company

3. Enter the new company information.

Enter the following information for the new LSC company:

- ☐ **Company ID** - Enter a *unique* code or name to identify the new company. A maximum of 40 characters can be entered. For example, enter “Blue Ribbon-TX” to identify Blue Ribbon’s Texas office site. This is the only required field in the Add New Company dialog box.
- ☐ **Address Line 1 & 2** - Enter the address of the company. A maximum of 30 characters can be entered.
- ☐ **City** - Enter the city in which the company is located. A maximum of 20 characters can be entered.
- ☐ **State** - Enter the state in which the company is located. A maximum of 10 characters can be entered.
- ☐ **Zip** - Enter the zip code of the company. A maximum of 10 characters can be entered.
- ☐ **Country** - Enter the country in which the company is located. A maximum of 15 characters can be entered.
- ☐ **Fax** - Enter the company’s fax number. A maximum of 20 characters can be entered.

- ☐ **Email** - Enter the company's Email information. A maximum of 50 characters can be entered.

4. Choose the Save button.

The Add New Company dialog box closes, and the new company ID is listed in the Setup Company dialog box.

---

HINT:

**An account is only linked one company ID. Therefore, for a company that has several locations, link the most frequently used location to the account ID.**

---

## Maintaining Company IDs

Use the following procedure to delete or modify the information for an existing company.

---

NOTE:

**Company ID data can also be modified from within the Contact Details dialog box. When company information is changed in the Contact Details dialog box and the Save button is chosen, a prompt displays giving you the option of updating the company information.**

---

1. Choose the Setup Company command from the Administration menu.  
The Setup Company dialog box displays listing all companies.
2. To delete a company, highlight the company name in the Setup Company dialog box and choose the Delete button.  
The message "Do you wish to delete this entry?" displays. Choose the Yes button to delete the company.
3. To edit company information, highlight the company name in the Setup Company dialog box and choose the Edit button.

The Edit Company dialog box displays, as in Figure 5-11.

Figure 5-11: Editing Company Information

4. Edit the company information.

This box is identical in form and usage to the Add New Company dialog box with the exception that the operations are performed for an existing LSC company rather than for creating a new company.

5. Choose the Save button.

The Edit Company dialog box closes.

---

## Qualification Lists

The LSC database is made up of several lists which maintain and categorize ticket information. Most ticket information is obtained from or written to a “qualification list,” which is used for data validation and for compiling ticket records.

Qualification lists cannot be added to LSC; however, individual entries in most qualification lists can be added, modified and/or removed to reflect your own support environment. For example, by default LSC includes the entries INFO and PRODSTAT in the Issue Type qualification list. Your support environment may also require an Issue Type called REFERENCE.

Many qualification lists directly correspond to the fields in the Ticket window. For example, there is a Priority qualification list which corresponds to the Priority field. When creating or editing tickets, the fields with a drop-down list let you select existing entries from the corresponding qualification list. This feature is important to maintaining the integrity and consistency of the LSC ticket data.

Many of the qualification lists are populated with information upon the installation of LSC. The following table describes the contents and intent of each qualification list.

Qualification List	Description	Default Entries
Action Code	Code used to indicate the action taken on a ticket. The TO_DO default entry name cannot be edited or deleted.	REROUTED SOLVED TELEPHONED TO_DO
Department	Departments or areas in which callers work (e.g., ACCOUNTING, SALES or COST_CENTER#1, ABC CO).	ACCOUNTING ADMIN INT'L SALES MARKETING SALES TRAINING
First Name	First names of the callers.	
Issue Type	Type of ticket for categorization purposes (e.g., BUG, INFO).	INFO PRODSTAT

*Continued...*

Qualification List	Description	Default Entries
Last Name	Last names of the callers.	
Network Address	Network addresses of the callers.	
Priority	<p>Priorities that can be assigned to a ticket. The entry names in the Priority list can only be edited: new entries cannot be added and existing entries cannot be deleted. This is true even if the Priority label is changed.</p> <p>Further, the color display of the default priorities in the View Tickets window is as follows:  Urgent=red; Important=pink;  Necessary=green; Desired=brown.  This is true even if the Priority entry names are changed.</p>	URGENT IMPORTANT NECESSARY DESIRED
Problem Type	Names used to describe and categorize the type of problems the callers are experiencing. This database has related sub-categories. Refer to the discussion on page 103 entitled “Managing Problem Type Sub-categories.”	

---

NOTES ON THE QUALIFICATION LIST TABLE:

**a - The default qualification list names are listed in the table above. If you change the LSC database labels, your qualification list names also change.**

**b - The term “caller” is used to represent the person for whom the ticket is created (e.g., the person requesting support, the person requiring a training class).**

**c - The Assigned To category is not considered a qualification list because the entries that display in this drop-down field in the Ticket window are driven by the support staff users’ initials listed in the Setup Staff dialog box. Similarly, the Account ID category is not a qualification list —the entries that display in this drop-down field in the Ticket window are driven by the IDs listed in the Setup Account dialog box.**

---

## Modifying Qualification Items

The qualification list items provided with LSC can be customized to apply specifically to your organization. For example, you might want to modify the items in the Departments list so they specifically apply to your support environment. In addition to the Department names provided by LSC, you might want to categorize support calls by mail stops or cost centers.

---

### NOTES:

**a - Users are only able to modify the qualification lists that are checked in their user profile (i.e., the rights they were granted via the Administration/Setup Staff command).**

**b - If a user is given the right to modify a qualification list, then the user can add entries to the list by entering the information directly into the corresponding fields of a Ticket window. When the ticket is saved, the new entry is added to the appropriate qualification list. For example, if user Helen has the right to modify the Department list, then Helen can save a ticket having QA in the Department field. Doing so will add QA to the Department qualification list without having to perform the procedure below.**

---

Use the following procedure to modify a database item.

1. Choose the Qualification Lists command from the Administration menu.  
The Qualification Lists dialog box displays, as in Figure 5-12.

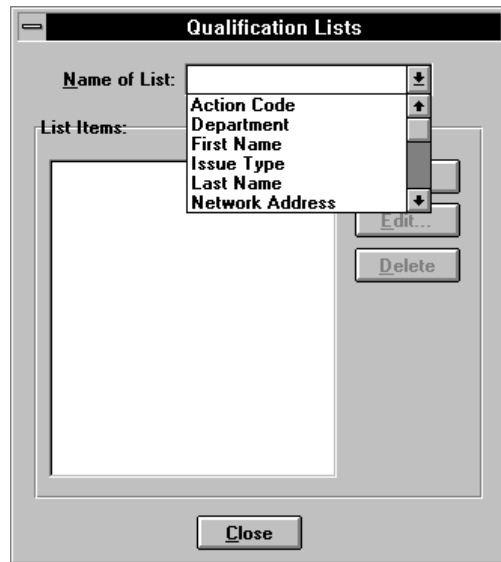


Figure 5-12: Displaying the Qualification List Names

2. Select a name from the drop-down list associated with the Name of List field.

Choose the down arrow button next to the Name of List field to view all qualification list names. When a qualification list is selected, its items display in the List Items field. In Figure 5-13, the Action Code database has been selected, and its items consist of the following: REROUTED, SOLVED, TELEPHONED and TO\_DO. These items represent the type of actions that can be assigned to a ticket.

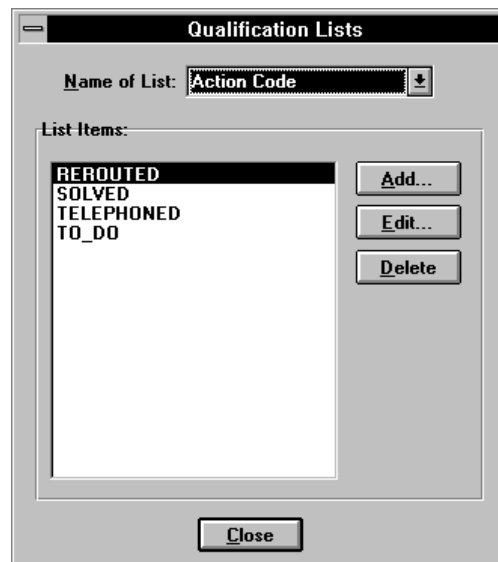


Figure 5-13: Displaying the Items in the Action Code List

3. Modify the qualification list item information.

Possible modifications include the following:

- ☐ **Adding an item** - To add a new item to a list, choose the Add button. An Add Item dialog box displays prompting you to specify the name of the new item. Type the name and choose the OK button. The new item is added to the qualification list.
- ☐ **Editing an item** - To edit an existing item in a list, highlight the item and choose the Edit button. An Edit Item dialog box displays with the selected item name. Make changes to the name and choose the OK button. The item name is updated.
- ☐ **Deleting an item** - To delete an existing item from a list, highlight the item in the list and choose the Delete button. The item name is removed from the list.

---

NOTES:

**a - The Priority qualification list items can only be edited: new entries cannot be added and existing entries cannot be deleted.**

**b - Items for the Problem Type qualification list can be assigned sub-categories. For example, you might want to track the support calls related to printer problems. Related PRINTER sub-categories might include DRUM and CARTRIDGE. Refer to the discussion below entitled “Managing Problem Type Sub-categories.”**

---

---

**c - The TO\_DO Action item is a special default item and cannot be edited or deleted.**

---

4. To close the Qualification Lists dialog box, choose the Close button.

## Managing Problem Type Sub-categories

The Problem Type qualification list categorizes the types of problems monitored by LSC. To further categorize problem types and track your support efforts, detailed sub-categories can be assigned to the items in this list. These sub-categories comprise the Product Category list available from the Ticket window.

For example, your support environment might monitor SOFTWARE problems. Monitoring the SOFTWARE problem type is helpful; however, creating a sub-category named WORD would allow you to monitor specific software problems concerning the Word program. Tracking the Word Software problem type might result in discovering a problem in the way in which the Word program is being installed across your network. It might also result in discovering that your users require more training in using the Word software.

The level of detail entered in the Problem Type list and the related sub-categories affects the integrity and consistency of your LSC data. This list requires careful planning and attention.

---

### HINTS:

**a - To avoid having the support staff define sub-categories while creating tickets, define detailed problem type sub-categories.**

**b - To track unusual/unidentified problems, create a problem type named UNDETERMINED. You can run a report listing all tickets assigned the UNDETERMINED problem type and update the field when the problem is identified.**

---

Use the following procedure to manage the Problem Type sub-categories (i.e., the related Product Categories).

1. Choose the Qualification Lists command from the Administration menu.  
The Qualification Lists dialog box displays.
2. Select the Problem Type database from the drop-down list associated with the Name of List field.

The Qualification Lists dialog box shown in Figure 5-14 displays. The Related Product Category field displays listing the sub-category items that pertain to the

highlighted list item. For example, in Figure 5-14 the PRINTER item is highlighted, and the sub-categories defined for PRINTER are listed in the Related Product Category field (i.e., CARTRIDGE, DRUM, TONER).

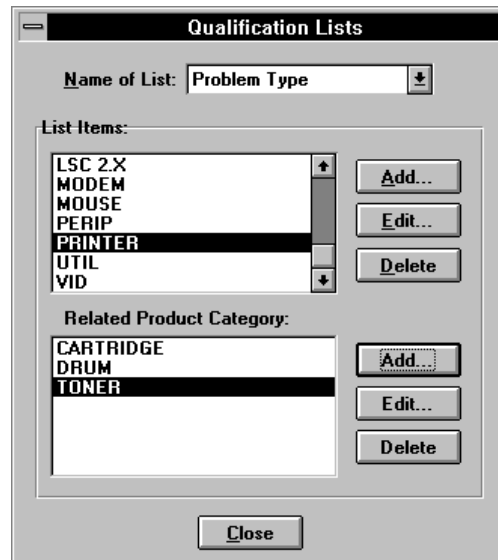


Figure 5-14: Defining Items and Related Problem Type Categories

3. Define or modify the Related Product Category information.
  - ☐ **Adding a Sub-Category** - To add a sub-category to the highlighted problem type, choose the Add button in the lower area of the Qualification Lists dialog box. The Add Related Item dialog box displays, prompting you to specify the name of the new sub-category. Enter the name and choose the OK button. The new sub-category is added to the Related Product Category list.
  - ☐ **Editing a Sub-Category** - To edit an existing sub-category in the highlighted problem type, highlight the related product category item and choose the Edit button in the lower area of the Qualification Lists dialog box. The Edit Related Item dialog box displays with the selected sub-category name. Make changes to the name and choose the OK button. The sub-category name is updated.
  - ☐ **Deleting a Sub-Category** - To delete an existing sub-category from the Related Product Category list, highlight the sub-category name and choose the Delete button in the lower area of the Qualification Lists dialog box. The sub-category name is removed from the list.
4. To close the Qualification Lists dialog box, choose the Close button.

---

## Archiving and Restoring Tickets

As the LAN Support Center program is used, the number of tickets in the database continues to increase. To use disk space more efficiently, you might want to remove a group of selected tickets from the “current ticket database” and place them into an “historical ticket database.”

The above database terms are defined as follows:

- ☐ **Current Ticket Database** - the group of tickets to which new tickets are added. The current ticket database is used on a daily basis and should consist of primarily active/open tickets. There is only one current database at any time.
- ☐ **Historical Ticket Database** - a group of tickets that have been removed from the current database. These archived tickets can be loaded into LSC for reference purposes; however, changes to the historical database tickets should not be made. There can be any number of historical databases.

The process of archiving tickets moves the selected group of tickets into a user-defined historical database file. The information is still accessible from within LSC. By default, the LSC user works with tickets in the “current database.” However, when researching and investigating support issues, it may become necessary to access tickets residing in an historical database. This procedure is discussed in detail in the section entitled “Viewing Historical Tickets” in Chapter 7.

In addition to simply accessing archived tickets, LSC provides the ability to restore an entire historical database file. The process of restoring the file moves the entire group of archived tickets back into the current LSC ticket database.

The procedures for archiving and restoring tickets are discussed in this section.

### Archiving Tickets

When identifying a specific group of tickets to be archived into an historical database, filter criteria can be specified. The filter criteria defines the group of tickets to be archived. For example, if your support environment only works with open tickets from within the last two months, then you might want to archive all closed tickets that are older than two months. If the current date is December 31,

1993, then the filter criteria of the tickets to be archived might include all Closed Tickets to 10/31/1993.

In addition to defining the group of tickets to be archived, you have the option to either add the tickets to an existing historical database file or create a new historical database file.

---

NOTE:

**For increased speed and database performance, keeping the number of tickets in an LSC database (i.e., current or archived) be fewer than 20,000 is recommended.**

---

Use the following procedure to remove selected tickets from the current ticket database.

1. Choose the Archive Tickets command from the Administration menu.

The Archive Tickets dialog box displays, as in Figure 5-15.

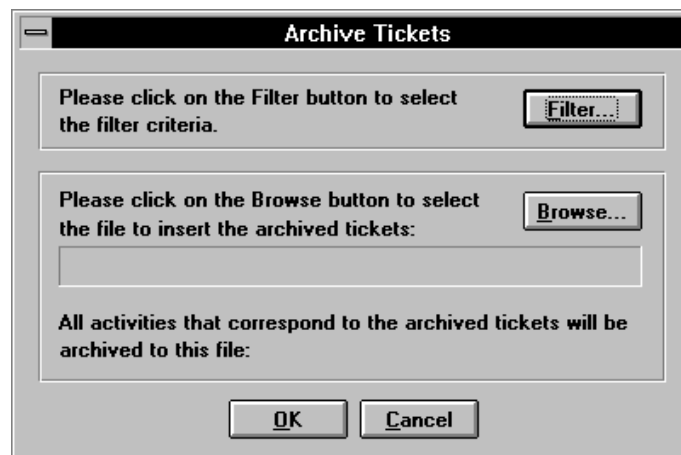


Figure 5-15: Archiving Tickets to an Historical Database

2. Choose the Filter button to define the group of tickets to be archived.

The Filter Ticket List dialog box displays, as in Figure 5-16. Entering specific filtering criteria defines the tickets to be archived. Only those tickets

that match the filter criteria will be archived into the historical ticket database.

Figure 5-16: Defining the Tickets to be Archived

3. Define the filter criteria of the tickets to be archived.

In the fields provided, specify the information of the tickets to be archived. For example, to archive all tickets that have been resolved, choose the SOLVED entry from the Action Code field's drop-down list; to archive one specific ticket, enter the ticket number in the Ticket # field.

---

**NOTE:**

**When archiving a group of tickets, enter specific filtering information in order to archive the desired tickets. Wildcards are not allowed.**

---

4. Choose the OK button to accept the filter criteria.

The Filter Ticket List dialog box closes, and you are returned to the Archive Tickets dialog box.

5. Choose the Browse button to specify the historical database file name.

The Browse dialog box displays prompting you to enter the File Name and destination of the file which will maintain the archived tickets.

You can either:

- ☐ **Add the selected tickets to an existing historical database file** - Enter the full path name of the historical database file in the File Name field. (If you do not know the file name and path, choose entries in the Directories and Drives lists to search for the archive file. From the list of file names which displays under the File Name

field, click on the file name into which you want to add the new archived tickets.)

- ☐ **Create a new historical database file** - Enter the full path name of the new historical database file in the File Name field. (You can also choose entries from the Directories and Drives lists to define the full path into which you want to place the new archived ticket file.)

---

NOTES:

**a - LSC historical database file names are assigned the extension .ARC.**

**b - If the path is not specified when creating a new database file, then the file is placed into the current directory (as indicated under the Directories field in the Browse dialog box).**

**c - If the file already exists when attempting to create a new database file, then the selected tickets are added to the end of the existing file. If the existing file is not in an LSC archival file format, then you are prompted to overwrite the file contents.**

---

6. Choose the OK button to accept the archive file name.

The Browse dialog box closes, and you are returned to the Archive Tickets dialog box. This dialog box now displays the destination directory and archive file name.

7. Choose the OK button to initiate the archival process.

The selected ticket information is moved into the historical database file. Upon completion, the following files are created to maintain information regarding the archived tickets:

- ☐ the .ARC file maintains the historical database
- ☐ the .ACT file maintains the ticket actions
- ☐ the .DES file maintains the ticket problem descriptions
- ☐ the .DEA file maintains the action descriptions

## Restoring Tickets

Archived tickets are accessible to the LSC user by restoring the historical ticket database. When researching and investigating problems, it may become necessary to restore a selected database.

---

NOTE:

---

---

**The restore process moves the entire historical file back into the current LSC database. A single ticket cannot be tagged and restored.**

---

Use the following procedure to restore an entire historical database file.

1. Choose the Restore Tickets command from the Administration menu.

The Restore Tickets dialog box displays, as in Figure 5-17.



Figure 5-17: Restoring an Historical Database

2. Choose the Browse button to specify the historical database file name to be restored.

The Browse dialog box displays prompting you to enter the File Name of the database to be restored.

3. Enter the full path name of the historical database file (i.e., the .ARC file) in the File Name field.

Choose entries in the Directories and Drives lists to search for the archived database file. From the list of file names which displays under the File Name field, click on the desired file name.

4. Choose the OK button to accept the file name.

The Browse dialog box closes, and you are returned to the Restore Tickets dialog box. This dialog box now displays the full path name of the file to be restored.

5. Choose the OK button to initiate the restore process.

All tickets and their associated actions and descriptions in the selected historical database are moved into the current database.

## Printer Setup and Administration

Printer control information identifies the printer parameters and controls the printing of all reports associated with LSC activity and administration. Before printing LSC reports, you should review the printer configuration to be sure it reflects the printer settings that you require. Printer settings include:

- ☐ Printer destination
- ☐ Page orientation (portrait/landscape)
- ☐ Paper size and source
- ☐ Graphics resolution

The procedures for customizing the contents of individual LSC reports are discussed in Chapter 8, “LSC Reports.” This section briefly presents the procedures for viewing and changing the global print settings (e.g., target printer, paper size) for Windows.

### Changing Print Settings

Use the following procedure to review and change your print settings.

1. Choose the Print Setup command from the File menu.

The Print Setup dialog box displays, as in Figure 5-18.

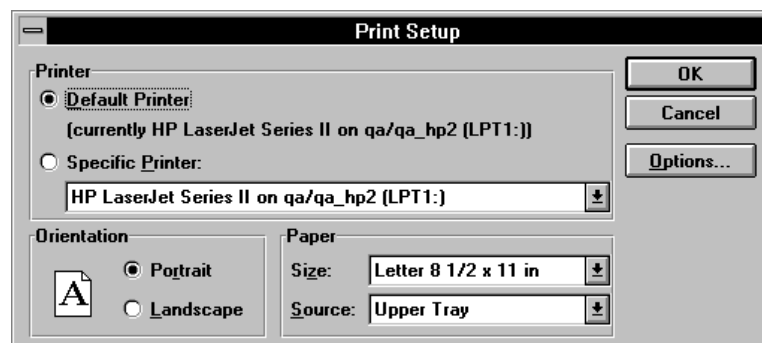


Figure 5-18: Defining Print Parameters

2. Select the printer you want to use for printing LSC reports.

The printer defined in your Windows printer control is selected as the default. To use another printer, select a Specific Printer from the drop-down list associated with this field.

3. Select the desired orientation and paper parameters.

Choose either the Portrait (long) or Landscape (wide) Orientation setting. Use the drop-down lists to define the Paper Size and Paper Source settings.

4. To make additional changes to the selected printer configuration, choose the Options button.

Additional settings include dithering and intensity control.

5. Choose the OK button in the Print Setup dialog box to save the print settings.

---

NOTE:

**These print settings are global throughout your Windows environment. Please refer to your Windows manual for detailed procedures on modifying the above print settings.**

---

This ends the chapter on setting up and administering the LAN Support Center parameters. Refer to the following chapter for procedures for creating and maintaining work tickets.

## Chapter 6 Work Tickets

The previous chapter discussed the LSC setup and administrative procedures. This chapter describes the procedures for creating and maintaining work tickets.

### Introduction

A work ticket is a collection of related information regarding an event. The “event” is the incident for which information is maintained and tracked. Tickets can track virtually any number of event types. Consider creating tickets for any of the following events:

- ☐ Support requests and issues
- ☐ Installation scheduling
- ☐ Training sessions
- ☐ Enhancement or upgrade requests

This chapter discusses the procedures for creating and maintaining work tickets. Throughout the chapter, examples are used to illustrate methods for tracking various event types.

### What’s in this Chapter

The following chart describes the sections in this chapter:

SECTION	DESCRIPTION
Creating Tickets	Provides procedures for creating, deleting and printing tickets.

Maintaining Ticket Information	Provides procedures for managing associated ticket action and contact detail information. Also discusses the procedures for cross-referencing tickets and editing date field entries.
Investigating	Provides procedures for accessing other McAfee products from within LSC for investigative and problem resolution purposes.

---

## Creating Tickets

The process of creating tickets is the essence of LSC. All information maintained and tracked by LSC is done so via a ticket.

Depending on the responsibilities assigned to your support staff and the flow of information within your organization, one staff member or all staff members might create tickets. For example, Mike answers phones for the support desk staff at the Blue Ribbon company. For each incoming phone call, Mike creates a ticket with the caller's information and problem. Throughout the day, the support desk supervisor assigns the tickets to specific staff members. The staff members are responsible for handling the tickets they have been assigned.

## Ticket Window Fields

All information regarding an "event" is entered into a Ticket window. An "event" is defined as the item being tracked by LSC. For example, an event might be a support call or it might be a scheduled installation. A Ticket window is illustrated in Figure 6-1.

Ticket #CF940209133904

Account ID : NEWDATA #120

First Name : MATTHEW

Last Name : JONES

Department : SALES

Phone :

Assigned to : CF

Issue Type :

Priority : URGENT

Network Address :

Problem Type :

Product Category :

Cross Reference :

Status:

☒ Opened on : 1994/02/09 13:39

☐ Closed on :

Problem Description

Add Action... Save Cancel

Figure 6-1: A Ticket Window

When a new ticket is created, LSC automatically assigns a number to the ticket. The ticket number displays in the title bar of the Ticket window and cannot be modified by the LSC user.

Each ticket number is determined by the following information:  
 IIIYYMMDDHHMMSS, where III=staff initials, YY=year, MM=month, DD=day, HH=hour, MM=minute and SS=second. For example, the ticket number in Figure 6-1 indicates that this ticket was created on February 9, 1994 at 1:39:04 in the afternoon by the staff member that has the LSC login initials 'CF'.

Each field in the Ticket window is defined and discussed in the table below.

---

NOTES:

**a - If your LSC database labels have been modified, the field names and definitions for your Ticket window may be different. For more information on labeling, refer to "Database Labeling" in Chapter 5.**

**b - Multiple Ticket windows can be open simultaneously.**

---

Field	Description	Type
-------	-------------	------

Account ID	The account to which this ticket belongs. Each Account ID must be unique. Every account has an associated First Name, Last Name, Phone, Department, Network Address and Company ID field. Entering an existing Account ID will automatically populate all associated fields. Account IDs can be set up directly from within the Ticket window or by choosing the Setup Account command from the Administration menu. Refer to “Accounts IDs” in Chapter 5 for detailed instructions on setting up accounts.	55 chars
First Name	The first name of the person/customer associated with the account entered in the Account ID field.	20 chars
Last Name	The last name of the person/customer associated with the account entered in the Account ID field.	20 chars
Department	The department of the person/customer associated with the account entered in the Account ID field.	30 chars
Phone	The phone number of the person/customer associated with the account entered in the Account ID field.	27 digits
Assigned To	The code/name of the LSC staff member assigned to handle the ticket. This field defaults to the initials supplied by the user who logged in to LSC.	3 chars

*Continued...*

Field	Description	Type
Issue Type	The code/name which indicates the type of ticket being issued.	10 chars
Priority	The priority assigned to the ticket. (The color display of each priority is as follows: Urgent=red; Important=pink; Necessary=green; Desired=brown.)	10 chars
Problem Type	The type of problem being reported. The item entered in this field determines the items that can be selected from the related Product Category drop-down list.	15 chars
Product Category	The category of the problem being reported. The entries available from this drop-down list are determined by the entry in the Problem Type field. For example, if DRIVE is entered as the Problem Type, then available product categories may be ANY MASS STORAGE DEVICE and DISK DRIVE A.	30 chars
Network Address	The network address of the person/customer associated with the account entered in the Account ID field.	20 digits + a colon (8 digits: 12 digits)
Cross Reference	Any information which can be used to cross reference the ticket to another item (e.g., another ticket or another application).  Press the <ALT><Z> keys to paste the ticket number of the highlighted ticket in the View Tickets window into the active Ticket window's Cross Reference field.	15 alphanum
Status	Mutually exclusive radio buttons that indicate the status of the ticket. Each button is associated with a date and time field. By default, the current system date displays for the Opened On date. (Refer to the section on page 129 for procedures on editing date values.)	N/A
Problem Description	A detailed description of the problem which can be up to approximately 2 full pages of text.	4K

Many of the fields in the Ticket window have drop-down lists from which items can be selected. For example, choosing the Product Category field's drop-down list displays a list of entries that have been defined for the Product Category qualification list (refer to the partial Ticket window shown in Figure 6-2). Clicking on an entry in the drop-down list places the chosen entry in the selected field.

The image shows a screenshot of a 'Ticket' window. The 'Product Category' field is active, showing a drop-down list with the following items: 'ACCESSORY', 'ANY BUSINESS APP.', 'ANY BUSINESS APPLICA', 'ANY CPU', 'ANY MASS STORAGE DE', and 'ANY STORAGE MEDIUM'. Other fields in the window include 'Problem Type', 'Network Address', 'Cross Reference', 'Status' (with radio buttons for 'Opened on' and 'Closed on'), and a date/time field showing '1993/12/07' and '20:21'.

Figure 6-2: The Product Category Drop-Down List

For those fields which have drop-down lists, typing in new entries adds the new entry to the associated qualification list. For example, if the name ACCOUNTING is not listed in the Department drop-down list, then entering the name ACCOUNTING into the Department field and saving the ticket will add the name to the Department qualification list.

---

#### NOTES:

**a - Users are only able to type new entries in a Ticket window field if they are granted the appropriate rights in their staff member profile. Refer to “Staff Membership and Security” in Chapter 5 for instructions on setting up staff members and defining security rights.**

**b - Refer to “Qualification Lists” In Chapter 5 for a discussion on LSC’s qualification lists.**

---

The procedures for creating and maintaining tickets are discussed in this chapter.

## Creating New Tickets

Inquiries, events and issues are tracked via a ticket number. To assign a ticket to a specific customer account, an account ID can be specified on the ticket. The steps required for creating new tickets involve entering information regarding the ticket’s

initial purpose. For example, when a customer requests support, a new ticket is created which documents the caller's account, name, company and phone information, as well as documents the caller's request.

The process of trying to solve the caller's problem is referred to as "action." Logging ticket action is discussed in the section of this chapter entitled "Maintaining Ticket Information."

---

**NOTE:**

**New tickets are placed in the ticket database that is loaded at the time the new ticket is saved. To add the new tickets to the current LSC ticket database, make sure that the current database is being viewed (as opposed to the View Historical Tickets window).**

---

Use the following procedure to create a new ticket.

1. Choose the New Ticket command from the Ticket menu, or choose the New tool bar button.

The Ticket window displays, as in Figure 6-3. A ticket number is automatically assigned by LSC. It is indicated in the title bar of the Ticket window and represents the LSC login user initials, year, month, day, hour, minute, and second of the ticket's creation.

The screenshot shows a window titled "Ticket #LSC940215122040". The window contains the following fields and controls:

- Account ID**: Text input field.
- First Name**: Text input field.
- Last Name**: Text input field.
- Department**: Text input field.
- Phone**: Text input field.
- Assigned to**: Text input field with "LSC" selected.
- Issue Type**: Text input field.
- Priority**: Text input field with "URGENT" selected.
- Network Address**: Text input field.
- Problem Type**: Text input field.
- Product Category**: Text input field.
- Cross Reference**: Text input field.
- Status**: Radio button group with "Opened on" selected. The "Opened on" field shows "1994/02/15" and "12:20". There is also a "Closed on" field which is empty.
- Problem Description**: A large text area for describing the problem.
- Buttons**: "Add Action...", "Save", and "Cancel" buttons at the bottom right.

Figure 6-3: A New Ticket Window

2. Enter the ticket information.

For detailed information on the Ticket window fields, refer to the table on page 114.

---

NOTES:

**a - Selecting an Account ID from the drop-down list associated with this field will automatically enter the information defined for the account (i.e., First Name, Last Name, Department, Phone, and Network Address).**

**b - New accounts can be set up from within the Ticket window by typing in the new account information. Upon saving the ticket, the new account information is also saved.**

**c - Existing accounts can be updated from within the Ticket window by modifying the account information and saving the ticket. Upon saving the ticket, a prompt displays asking whether you want to update the account information. Answering Yes to this prompt will update the account data and all new tickets that are assigned to the account will reflect the updated information. Answering No will save the modified account data with this ticket only.**

**d - Ticket action can also be entered at this point by choosing the Add Action button. Refer to the procedure on page 122.**

---

3. Choose the Save button.

If you have selected an account from the Account ID drop-down list and then modified the account data, a prompt displays asking whether you want to update the account information. Answering Yes to this prompt will update the account data. Answering No will save the modified account data with this ticket only.

The ticket is saved into the current ticket database.

## Cross-Referencing Tickets

The Ticket window's Cross Reference field can be used to build a knowledge base of information regarding a specific issue or problem type. For example, new tickets can be cross-referenced to "TECHNICAL" Issue Type tickets which outline known problems and their solutions. Either from an LSC report or the View Tickets window, the LSC Administrator then has access to all tickets related to the specific Technical ticket that has ticket number 'x'. In this example, a report query can be created which includes only ticket number 'x', or a filter can be applied to the View Tickets window which only displays the tickets having ticket number 'x' in the Cross Reference field.

---

HINTS:

---

---

**a - LSC's extensive short-cut keys facilitate the cross-referencing of tickets to one-another. Pressing the <ALT><Z> keys in a Ticket window will paste the ticket number of the highlighted ticket in the View Tickets window into the active Ticket window's Cross Reference field.**

**b - Use the Edit menu commands to cut, copy and paste information between open Ticket windows.**

---

In addition to cross-referencing among LSC tickets, the Cross Reference field can be used to track information external to LSC. For example, if LSC tickets are created to track installations, entering a Purchase Order number in the Cross Reference field can track the PO number of each installed equipment component. This information might be useful in tracking equipment movement from purchase to installation, as well as assessing future equipment purchase requirements.

## Deleting Tickets

In some instances, it might become necessary to delete a ticket and all of its associated information.

Use the following procedure to delete a ticket from the ticket database.

1. From the View Tickets window, highlight the ticket to be deleted.

To display the View Tickets window, choose either the Current Tickets or Historical Tickets command from the View menu, depending on where the ticket is located.

If necessary, use the scroll bars in the View Tickets window to find the ticket to be deleted.

2. Choose the Delete Ticket command from the Ticket menu, or choose the Delete tool bar button.

You are prompted to confirm the ticket deletion. Choose the Yes button to delete the selected ticket, or choose the No button to cancel the delete action.

The deleted ticket is removed from the LSC ticket database and will no longer display in the View Tickets window.

---

### NOTE:

**A ticket can also be deleted while its Ticket window is open. To do so, choose the Delete tool bar button. You are prompted to confirm the delete action. Choose the Yes button to delete the ticket displayed in the open Ticket window.**

---

### WARNING:

---

Use the delete action with caution as all references to deleted tickets are completely removed from the LSC database.

---

## Printing Tickets

All printing is performed using the currently defined print parameters. To modify or verify the current print parameters, choose the Print Setup command from the File menu.

Use the following procedure to print a selected ticket.

1. From the View Tickets window, highlight the ticket to be printed.
2. Choose the Print Ticket command from the Ticket menu, or choose the Print tool bar button.

The ticket data is sent to the printer.

---

NOTE:

**A ticket can also be printed while its Ticket window is open. To do so, choose the Print tool bar button. The ticket data is sent to the printer.**

---

---

## Maintaining Ticket Information

Creating a ticket is the first step towards solving a support issue and/or scheduling timed events. For example, the tickets in your LSC database may represent requests for support, or they may represent installations to be performed. In either case, ticket maintenance is required to keep the ticket database information accurate and up-to-date.

Ticket maintenance is also referred to as “ticket action.” For example, if a ticket is created in order to solve a user’s printing problem, all of the events that take place to solve the problem are regarded as *action* performed on the ticket. Each time an action is performed in response to a ticket, the action should be entered on the ticket. In addition to tracking the efforts of your support staff, the action entries can be used to accumulate billable time spent while trying to solve a client’s problem.

Contact details can also be associated with a ticket. Contact details include information regarding the person/company for whom the ticket is issued.

The procedures regarding ticket maintenance are discussed in this section.

---

NOTE:

---

---

**To support multiple users, LSC locks the ticket (window) as soon as it is opened by a user. This ensures that only one person can save changes to a ticket at anytime. When users attempt to edit the same ticket simultaneously, only the changes made by the “first” user will be effective (the user who locks the ticket). All other users will be alerted with a message informing them to edit the ticket later.**

---

## Adding Ticket Action

Each time an action is performed in response to a ticket, the action should be entered for problem tracking and ticket maintenance purposes. Each new ticket action is entered into the Add Action dialog box.

Use the following procedure to enter ticket action items.

1. Display the Add Action dialog box.

Use any of the following methods to display the Add Action dialog box, as in Figure 6-4.

- ☐ Choose the Add Action button in an open Ticket window to add an action item to the ticket.
- ☐ Highlight a ticket in the View Tickets window, and choose the Action tool bar button to add an action item to the selected ticket.
- ☐ Highlight a ticket in the View Tickets window, and choose the Add Action command from the Ticket menu to add an action item to the selected ticket.

Add Action

Action Code:

Person:

LSC

Description:

Date:

1994/02/15

Time:

13:20

Time spent:

Initial Response?

☐ Yes

☒ No

Save

Cancel

Figure 6-4: Adding Ticket Action

2. Enter the action details.
- Each field in the Add Action dialog box is defined and discussed in the table below.

Field	Description
Action Code	Enter the code for the action performed (e.g., CALLBACK, INVESTIGATE, TO_DO). An action can be selected from the drop-down list associated with this field, or one can be typed in directly if you have been given sufficient user rights to do so. (Typing in a new action will add the new entry to the Action qualification list.)
Person	Enter the initials of the LSC staff member performing the action. The initials of the user logged in to LSC will display as the default. The initials can be selected from the drop-down list associated with this field, or they can be typed in directly if you have been given sufficient user rights to do so.
Description	Enter a detailed description of the action performed. Approximately 2 full pages of text can be entered.

Continued...

Field	Description
Date	Select the date on which the action is performed. The current system date is automatically entered as the default which can be changed by the user. The date is entered in YYYY/MM/DD format where Y=year, M=month and D=day. (Refer to the section on page 129 for procedures on editing date values.)
Time	Select the time at which the action is performed. The current system time is automatically entered as the default which can be changed by the user. The time is entered in HH:MM format where H=hour and M=minute. Use the up/down arrow buttons to scroll to a new desired time, or directly type in a new time.
Time Spent	Enter the time taken to perform the action. The time is entered in HH:MM format where H=hour and M=minute (e.g., 1:23 indicates 1 hour and 23 minutes). Use the up/down arrow buttons to scroll to a desired time, or directly type in the amount of time spent.
Initial Response	Select the Yes or No button to indicate whether or not the action being entered is the first action performed for the ticket. By default, the Initial Response button is set to No.

---

NOTES ON THE ADD ACTION DIALOG BOX FIELDS:

**a - The hours and minutes entered in the Time Spent field are automatically accumulated by generating the Daily Action Listing By Person report. Refer to Chapter 8 for instructions on generating LSC reports.**

**b - The Initial Response option is set to 'No' by default. Set this option to 'Yes' when entering new actions to determine the amount of time taken to respond to a ticket. Generating the Average Initial Response Time reports will automatically calculate the average time between when the ticket(s) has been opened and when the initial response(s) has been performed.**

HINT:

**Create Action entries which maintain various types of information regarding the ticket. For example, create an action named CONFIG to be used to describe a caller's workstation configuration. By entering the configuration information in the Description field, you can then filter the ticket list using the Keyword Search in Action Description option (e.g., filter all "386" machines).**

---

3. Choose the Save button.

The new action does not immediately display in the action items area of the View Tickets window. Click on the highlighted ticket in the View Tickets window to update the action items for the selected ticket.

## Editing Ticket Action

Existing ticket action entries are edited using the Edit Action dialog box.

Use the following procedure to edit an existing ticket action item.

1. Display the Edit Action dialog box.

Use any of the following methods to display the Edit Action dialog box, as in Figure 6-5.

- ☐ Double click on an entry listed in the action items area of the View Tickets window to edit an action item for the highlighted ticket.
- ☐ Highlight a ticket in the View Tickets window, and choose the Edit Action tool bar button.
- ☐ Highlight a ticket in the View Tickets window, and choose the Edit Action command from the Ticket menu.

The Edit Action dialog box displays the information entered for the existing action item.

**Edit Action**

Action Code:  Person:

Description:

Date:  Time:  Time spent:

Initial Response?  
☒ Yes ☐ No

Figure 6-5: Editing Ticket Action

2. Modify the action details.

The fields in the Edit Action dialog box are identical to those in the Add Action dialog box. Refer to the table on page 123 for details on each field.

To modify the information entered in a field, move the typing cursor into the field and enter the new information. Selecting a new item from a drop-down list will automatically enter the new item into the field.

Pressing the <TAB> key will move the cursor from field-to-field within this dialog box.

3. Choose the Save button.

The modified action information displays in the action items area of the View Tickets window.

## Deleting Ticket Action

Use the following procedure to delete an existing ticket action item.

1. From the action items area of the View Tickets window, highlight the action entry to be deleted.
2. Choose the Delete Action command from the Ticket menu, or choose the Delete Action tool bar button.

You are prompted to confirm the deletion. Choose the Yes button to delete the selected action entry, or choose the No button to cancel the delete action.

The deleted action entry is removed from the LSC ticket database and is no longer listed in the action items area of the View Tickets window.

## Maintaining Contact Details

Contact details can be entered and associated with a ticket. For tickets that are created in response to a customer problem or issue, a contact name and number becomes vital to the quality of the support provided by your staff.

Contact details include the address, fax and Email information for a specific Company ID. For example, assume that you frequently create tickets for the Blue Ribbon company which has three office locations. Three Company IDs are set up: Blue Ribbon-NY, Blue Ribbon-NJ, and Blue-Ribbon-CT. By simply selecting one of the Blue Ribbon company IDs, the desired contact information is associated with the ticket.

---

NOTES:

---

---

**a - Company IDs are set up by choosing the Setup Company command from the Administration menu (refer to the detailed procedures in “Company IDs” in Chapter 5.**

**b - Changing the information in the Contact Details dialog box will update the Company ID data throughout the LSC database. All existing and future tickets will reflect the updated information.**

---

Use the following procedure to enter and maintain contact details to be associated with a ticket.

1. Highlight a ticket in the View Tickets window, or open a Ticket window for which contact details are to be entered.
2. Choose the Contact tool bar button, or choose the Contact Details command from the Ticket menu.

The Contact Details dialog box displays, as in Figure 6-6. Any contact information previously entered for the selected ticket will also display.



Figure 6-6: Entering Contact Details for a Ticket

3. Enter or modify the contact information to be associated with the selected ticket.

The fields in this dialog box correspond to a Company ID.

- ☐ Select an existing Company ID to automatically fill in the address and phone information that has been defined for the selected Company ID.

- ☐ Enter new company information (new Company ID, address and phone) to create a new Company ID.
- ☐ Modify the field data to update the Company ID information.

All fields are optional.

---

**NOTE:**

The Company ID field is linked to the Account ID entered in the Ticket window. For example, assume that the “Blue Ribbon” account is set up with “Blue Ribbon-NY” as its Company ID. In this case, when “Blue Ribbon” is entered in the Account ID field in the Ticket window, all contact information for “Blue Ribbon-NY” will automatically display in the ticket’s associated Contact Details dialog box. Refer to Figure 6-7.

---

Figure 6-7: Contact Details for the Blue Ribbon Account

4. Choose the Save button.

If you have made changes to existing Company ID information, you are prompted to save the modified information to the Company ID. Choose the Yes button to save the changes, or choose the No button to cancel any changes you have made.

---

**NOTE:**

Choosing the Yes button in response to this prompt will update the contact details information for the Company ID. The contact details for all new and existing tickets will reflect the updated information.

---

## Editing Dates

Throughout LSC, there are several places where the user is able to enter or edit a date. In every date field, a pop-up dialog box can be displayed by double clicking in the field. These date fields include:

- ☐ the Ticket window's "Opened On" and "Closed On" fields
- ☐ the Add Action and Edit Action dialog box "Date" field
- ☐ the Filter Ticket List dialog box "Open Tickets From/To" and "Closed Tickets From/To" fields

## Scrolling to a New Date or Time

Every date and time field has "spin" buttons that can be used to change the value entered in the field. These spin buttons look similar to scroll buttons and are useful when you want to change the existing value to one that is already close to the desired value. For example, if "1994/01/15" is entered in the date field, click on "1994", and then choose the up scroll button to quickly change the date to "1995/01/15."

Remember, first click on the part of the value to be changed (e.g., year/month/day or hour/minute), and then choose the desired spin direction (either up or down).

## Moving to a New Date

Double clicking in a date field displays a calendar similar to Figure 6-8.



Figure 6-8: Modifying a Date Field

If there is a date value in the field when you double click, then that date will be reflected in the dialog box. For example, when the calendar in Figure 6-8 was displayed, the value “1993/11/05” was entered in the Date field. If there is no date value in the field when you double click, then the current system date will be reflected in the calendar.

Use the following procedure to change a date value using the calendar.

1. Double click in the Date field.  
The calendar displays, as in Figure 6-8.
2. Modify the Year, Month or Day.
  - ☐ To modify the year value, choose the left or right arrow buttons next to the year date. (In Figure 6-8, the year date is “1993” displayed at the top of the dialog box. Choose the left arrow button to change the year to 1992; choose the right arrow button to change the date to 1994.)
  - ☐ To modify the month value, choose the left or right arrow buttons next to the indicated month. (In Figure 6-8, the month is “NOVEMBER.” Choose the left arrow button to change the month to OCTOBER; choose the right arrow button to change the month to DECEMBER.)
  - ☐ To modify the date, choose a new date by clicking on a new date number. (In Figure 6-8, the currently selected date is “5.”)
3. Choose the OK button.

The calendar closes, and the selected date value is entered into the Date field.

---

## Investigating

LAN Support Center provides the capability for extensively tracking and managing various types of events. In some instances, investigation may be required to obtain additional information to resolve a problem or handle a support call. LSC lets you smart-launch into other McAfee applications installed on your network to take advantage of the applications' network management capabilities.

The McAfee products accessible from within LSC are:

- ☐ **BrightWorks** - McAfee's software management solution which integrates SiteMeter software metering with LAN Inventory asset management and adds software distribution capabilities.
- ☐ **SiteMeter Administration** - McAfee's software metering and virus protection program which maximizes the legal and productive use of your software.
- ☐ **SiteMeter Usage Monitor** - SiteMeter's Usage Monitor which displays information regarding an application's current use.
- ☐ **SiteMeter Reports** - SiteMeter's Reporting module which lets you generate reports containing information regarding software metering and the virus protection established for your network.
- ☐ **LAN Inventory** - McAfee's asset management program which collects and manages detailed inventory data for your local area network(s). (Workstation hardware and software configuration information can be accessed to help troubleshoot problems.)
- ☐ **NetRemote** - McAfee's remote control program which enables control over another user's workstation for the purpose of performing diagnostics.

---

### NOTES:

**a - For detailed information on the individual McAfee products, refer to the documentation provided in each product package.**

**b - The Investigate option requires that a search path be established to all of the McAfee products.**

---

## Smart-Launching

Use the following procedure to smart-launch into another McAfee application.

1. Choose the LSC Investigate tool bar button.

You can also choose the Investigate command from the Ticket menu. In either case, the Smart-Launch McAfee Applications dialog box displays.

Only the applications that are in your search path are accessible from the Smart-Launch dialog box. All other application options are disabled.

The Context area of the Smart-Launch dialog box displays the username and network address of the currently open and active LSC Ticket window. The Username is obtained from the ticket's First Name field, and the Station Address is obtained from the ticket's Network Address field.

2. Select a McAfee application, and choose the OK button.

The selected application launches, as follows:

- ☐ **BrightWorks** - BrightWorks is launched and displays the administration console. Use the BrightWorks console to perform software metering, asset management and software distribution.
- ☐ **SiteMeter Administration** - SiteMeter is launched and displays the administration console. Use the SiteMeter console to investigate software usage activity and detect corrupted files.
- ☐ **SiteMeter Usage Monitor** - SiteMeter is launched and displays the SiteMeter Usage Monitor for the file server associated with the Network Address in the currently active LSC Ticket window. If the active Ticket window does not contain the network address of a server, then the SiteMeter administration console displays. Use the SiteMeter Usage Monitor to see which users are using which applications.
- ☐ **SiteMeter Reports** - The SiteMeter reporting module displays in a DOS box. Use SiteMeter Reports to generate reports with information regarding software metering and the virus protection established for your network.
- ☐ **LAN Inventory** - LAI is launched and displays the inventory details associated with the First Name and Network Address fields in the currently active LSC Ticket window. Use LAI to investigate the hardware and software configuration of a workstation to determine the cause of a problem.

- ❑ **NetRemote** - NetRemote is launched and positioned to call the workstation associated with the Network Address in the currently active LSC Ticket window. Use NetRemote to take control over a workstation experiencing problems.

3. Use the McAfee application to investigate the problem.

For instructions on using the application, refer to the manual included in each product package.

4. Exit the application.

For instructions on exiting the application, refer to the manual included in each product package.

Upon exiting the application, you are returned to LSC.

This ends the chapter on creating and maintaining LSC work tickets. Refer to the next chapter for procedures on viewing ticket data.

## Chapter 7 Viewing Ticket Data

The previous chapter discussed the procedures for creating and managing ticket information. This chapter discusses the various methods available for viewing ticket information.

### Introduction

LAN Support Center provides various methods for viewing ticket information. An entire database of ticket information and the tickets' actions can be viewed via the View Tickets window; additionally, specific ticket information can be viewed via the Ticket window. (Refer to the overview of these windows in "The View Tickets Window" in Chapter 4.)

To accommodate users who are responsible for working on a particular type of ticket, the information displayed in the View Tickets window can be filtered to display only the tickets matching specific filter criteria. For example, if Sue is only responsible for the tickets that have an URGENT priority, then Sue may only want those tickets to display in her View Tickets window. Similarly, if Anna is responsible for scheduling training classes, then Anna may only want to view the tickets which pertain to the Training Department.

The various methods for managing the LSC ticket data display are discussed in this chapter.

### What's in this Chapter

The following chart describes the sections in this chapter:

SECTION	DESCRIPTION
---------	-------------

Filtering the View Tickets Window Display	Provides procedures for applying filter criteria against the View Tickets window.
Sorting the View Tickets Window Display	Provides procedures for defining the order in which the tickets are listed in the View Tickets window.
Custom Ticket Views	Provides procedures for creating customized views of the information which displays in the View Tickets window.
Ticket Databases	Provides procedures for viewing either the current ticket database or an historical ticket database.

---

## Filtering the View Tickets Window Display

Applying filter criteria to the View Tickets window causes LSC to display only those tickets that match the defined filter information. When no filter criteria is defined, all tickets in the LSC database are listed in the View Tickets window.

### Filtering the Ticket List

Use the following procedure to define filter criteria and narrow down the number of tickets that display in the View Tickets window. Filter criteria can be applied to the current and historical ticket databases.

1. Choose the View tool bar button to display the View Tickets window.

The View Tickets window must be open to define filter criteria.

2. Choose the Filter tool bar button.

You can also choose the Filter command from the View menu. The Filter Ticket List dialog box displays, as in Figure 7-1. If filter criteria have already been applied to the View Tickets window, then the defined criteria will display in the Filter Ticket List dialog box.

Filter Ticket List

Specify filter criteria: Account ID : <All>

Ticket # : Network Address : <All>

First Name : <All> Problem Type : <All>

Last Name : <All> Product Category :

Department : <All> Cross Reference :

Phone : Company ID : <All>

Assigned to : <All> Priority

Issue Type : <All> ☒ URGENT ☒ IMPORTANT

Action Code : <All> ☒ NECESSARY ☒ DESIRED

Keyword search in Problem Description: Keyword search in Action Description:

☐ Open tickets From: To: OK

☐ Closed tickets From: To: Cancel

Figure 7-1: The Filter Criteria Applied Against the View Tickets Window

NOTE:

If your LSC database labels have been modified, the field names and definitions for your Filter Ticket List dialog box will be different. For more information on labeling, refer to “Database Labeling” in Chapter 5.

3. Define the filter criteria.

Many of the fields in the Filter Ticket List dialog box are identical to the fields in the Ticket window. For example, entering KELLY in the First Name field of the Filter Ticket List dialog box will instruct LSC to include all tickets that have KELLY in the First Name field of the Ticket window. Similarly, many fields have drop-down lists from which items can be selected. For example, choosing the Product Category field’s drop-down list displays a list of entries that have been defined for the Product Category qualification list. Clicking on an entry in the drop-down list places the chosen entry in the selected field.

Field	Description	Corresponding Field Location
Account ID	From the drop-down list, select one Account ID.	Add/Edit Account dialog box; Ticket window
Ticket #	Enter a specific ticket number.	Ticket window title bar

First Name	From the drop-down list, select one first name.	Ticket window
Last Name	From the drop-down list, select one last name.	Ticket window
Department	From the drop-down list, select one department.	Ticket window
Phone	Enter a specific phone number.	Ticket window
Assigned to	From the drop-down list, select one staff member to whom tickets were assigned.	Ticket window
Issue Type	From the drop-down list, select one ticket issue type.	Ticket window
Action Code	From the drop-down list, select one action code.	Add/Edit Action dialog box

*Continued...*

Field	Description	Corresponding Field Location
Network Address	From the drop-down list, select one network address.	Ticket window
Problem Type	From the drop-down list, select one problem type.	Ticket window
Product Category	From the drop-down list, select one product category.	Ticket window
Cross Reference	Enter specific cross reference information.	Ticket window
Company ID	From the drop-down list, select one company ID.	Add/Edit Company; Contact Details dialog box
Priority	Place a checkmark in the priorities to be included in the filtered view. (At least one Priority must be selected.)	Ticket window
Keyword search in Problem Description	Enter a word or phrase to use in a context sensitive search in the Problem Description field of the Ticket window. Wildcards searches cannot be performed.	Ticket window
Keyword search in Action Description	Enter a word or phrase to use in a context sensitive search in the Description field of the Add/Edit Action dialog box. Wildcards searches cannot be performed.	Add/Edit Action dialog box
Open Tickets From/To	Enter an optional date range to restrict the number of tickets which apply. (Refer to “Maintaining Ticket Information” in Chapter 6 for procedures on editing date values.)	Ticket window (tickets having an Open Status)
Closed Tickets From/To	Enter an optional date range to restrict the number of tickets which apply. (Refer to “Maintaining Ticket Information” in Chapter 6 for procedures on editing date values.)	Ticket window (tickets having a Closed Status)

---

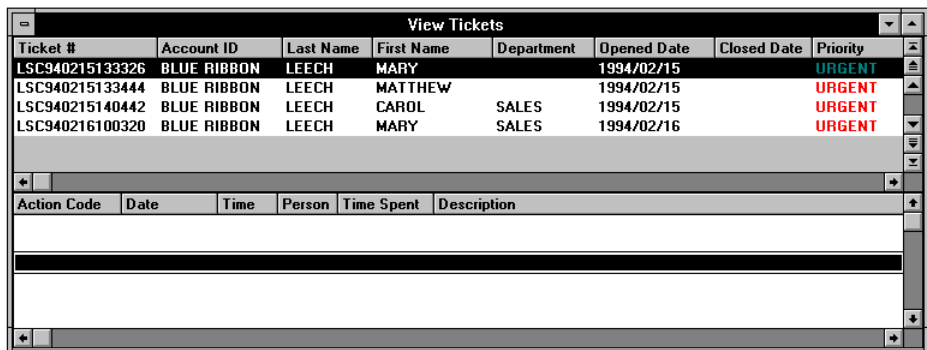
NOTES ON THE FILTER TICKET LIST DIALOG BOX:

- a - The <All> entry causes the field to be ignored in the filter definition.**
  - b - The <Blank> entry includes those tickets having blank corresponding fields.**
  - c - Wildcards are not allowed in any of the filtered fields.**
  - d - When entering a date range, the To date must be equal to or later than the From date.**
  - e - At least one Priority must be selected.**
- 

4. Choose the OK button.

The ticket information is filtered, and only those tickets that match the defined criteria will display in the View Tickets window.

The View Tickets window in Figure 7-2 illustrates the application of a filter which specified the entry 'LEECH' in the Last Name field.



Ticket #	Account ID	Last Name	First Name	Department	Opened Date	Closed Date	Priority
LSC940215133326	BLUE RIBBON	LEECH	MARY		1994/02/15		URGENT
LSC940215133444	BLUE RIBBON	LEECH	MATTHEW		1994/02/15		URGENT
LSC940215140442	BLUE RIBBON	LEECH	CAROL	SALES	1994/02/15		URGENT
LSC940216100320	BLUE RIBBON	LEECH	MARY	SALES	1994/02/16		URGENT

Action Code	Date	Time	Person	Time Spent	Description

Figure 7-2: A Filtered List of Tickets

---

## Sorting the View Tickets Window Display

Defining a sort order for the tickets in the View Tickets window instructs LSC to list the tickets according to a new sort order method. Depending on the selected sort order, up to three sort criteria can be defined. For example, if the primary sort key is defined as Assigned To, then the tickets can be further sorted according to Priority and then Problem Type. Given this sort order definition, the tickets in the View Tickets window would be sorted as in Figure 7-3 below.

In Figure 7-3, tickets are first listed according to the alphabetic order of the Assigned To field. The tickets are then sorted according to Priority (see note below) and finally sorted according to the alphabetic order of the Problem Type field.

View Tickets							
Last Name	First Name	Department	Opened Date	Closed Date	Priority	Assigned to	Problem Type
LEECH	MARY	SALES	1994/02/15		URGENT	HYE	DRIVE
LEECH	MARY	SALES	1994/02/15	1994/02/16	IMPORTANT	HYE	SOFTWARE
ANDERSON	WENDY	ADMINISTRATIVE	1993/10/26		URGENT	LSC	PRINTER
JONES	MATTHEW	ACCOUNTING	1994/02/15		IMPORTANT	LSC	CBT
LEECH	MARY	SALES	1993/12/16		NECESSARY	LSC	MOUSE
BURROUGH	GINA	INT'L SALES	1994/02/15	1994/02/16	URGENT	YYY	MOUSE
Action Code	Date	Time	Person	Time Spent	Description		

Figure 7-3: A Re-Sorted List of Tickets

#### NOTES:

**a - Sorting by Priority will result in the tickets appearing in the following order: URGENT, IMPORTANT, NECESSARY, DESIRED.**

**b - Sorting by Date will result in the tickets being listed in ascending date order (i.e., older dates are listed first).**

## Sorting the Ticket List

Use the following procedure to define the sort order of the tickets in the View Tickets window.

1. Choose the View tool bar button to display the View Tickets window.

The View Tickets window must be open to define a sort order.

2. Choose the Sort tool bar button.

You can also choose the Sort command from the View menu. The Select Sort Criteria dialog box displays, as in Figure 7-4. If a sort order has already been applied to the View Tickets window, then the defined sort criteria will display in the Select Sort Criteria dialog box.

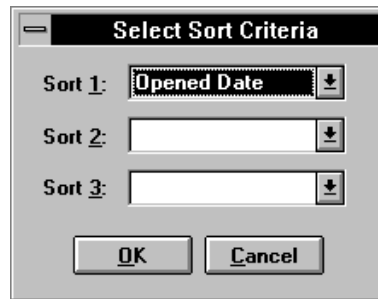


Figure 7-4: Selecting Sort Criteria

**NOTE:**

**If your LSC database labels have been modified, the sort order names in your Select Sort Criteria dialog box will be different. For more information on labeling, refer to “Database Labeling” in Chapter 5.**

## 3. Define the sort order.

Each Sort # field has a drop-down list from which the sort criteria can be selected. Depending on the selected sort order, up to three sort criteria can be defined.

The following table lists the fields that can be sorted and describes the sort result.

Sorted Field	Sort Method
Assigned To	Alphabetical - from A to Z
Closed Date	Numerical - increasing date order
Department	Alphabetical - from A to Z
Issue Type	Alphabetical - from A to Z
Last Name	Alphabetical - from A to Z
Opened Date	Numerical - increasing date order
Priority	Ordered according to: URGENT, IMPORTANT, NECESSARY, DESIRED

*Continued...*

Sorted Field	Sort Method
Problem Type	Alphabetical - from A to Z
Product Category	Alphabetical - from A to Z
Ticket #	Alphanumerically - from A to Z for the first three characters and then from 1 to xxx

4. Choose the OK button.

The tickets in the View Tickets window are sorted according to the defined sort order.

---

## Custom Ticket Views

A custom ticket view is a cross section of the tickets in the LSC database. Custom ticket views selectively display tickets that meet specific filter criteria, and as a result, they narrow down the number of tickets that display in the View Tickets window. Creating a custom ticket view is identical to applying filter and sort criteria; however, a custom view is saved and can be added to the View menu.

LSC provides several pre-defined ticket views which cannot be modified or deleted. Choosing the View menu displays the following pre-defined view options:

- ☐ Opened Assigned Tickets by Date
- ☐ Opened Assigned Tickets by Priority
- ☐ All Opened Tickets by Date
- ☐ All Opened Tickets by Priority
- ☐ All Closed Tickets by Date
- ☐ All Tickets by Date

Choosing a view option filters the View Tickets window data and displays only those tickets that apply to the selected view option.

LSC also allows users to create their own customized views of the ticket data. Ticket views are created by defining filter criteria and a sort order to be applied to the tickets listed in the View Tickets window. For example, assume that Karen only wants to view the tickets that have been assigned to her. Furthermore, Karen wants the tickets to be listed in ascending date order. In this case, Karen would define a

filter which included only the tickets that have KRN in the 'Assigned To' Ticket window field (i.e., Karen's login initials), and she would specify 'Opened Date' as the primary sort order. Karen would then save her customized view as "Karen's View."

## Creating Custom Ticket Views

Creating a custom ticket view narrows down the number of tickets that display in the View Tickets window, thereby, allowing the support staff to view only the tickets that pertain to them.

The procedure for creating a custom ticket view incorporates the procedures for "Filtering the Ticket List" and "Sorting the Ticket List" discussed on pages 135 and 140, respectively.

---

NOTE:

**To accommodate the limited length of a pop-up menu, the maximum number of custom views that can appear on the View menu is ten (10).**

---

Use the following procedure to create a custom ticket view.

1. Choose the Custom View Settings command from the Administration menu.

The Custom View Settings dialog box displays, as in Figure 7-5. This dialog box list any custom views that have already been defined.

---

NOTE:

**Because the pre-defined LSC custom views cannot be edited or deleted, they are not listed in this dialog box.**

---

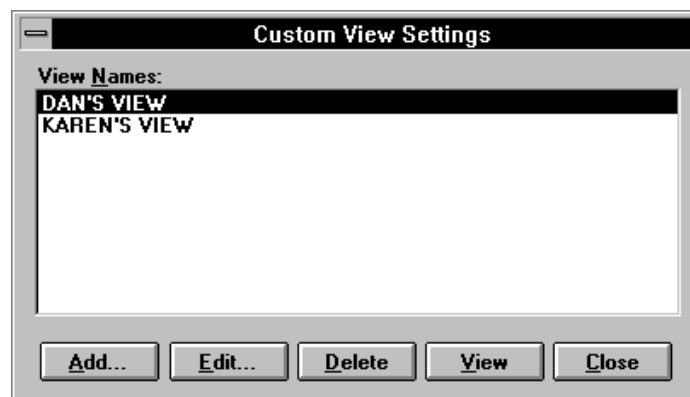


Figure 7-5: The List of Custom Views

2. To define a new custom view, choose the Add button.

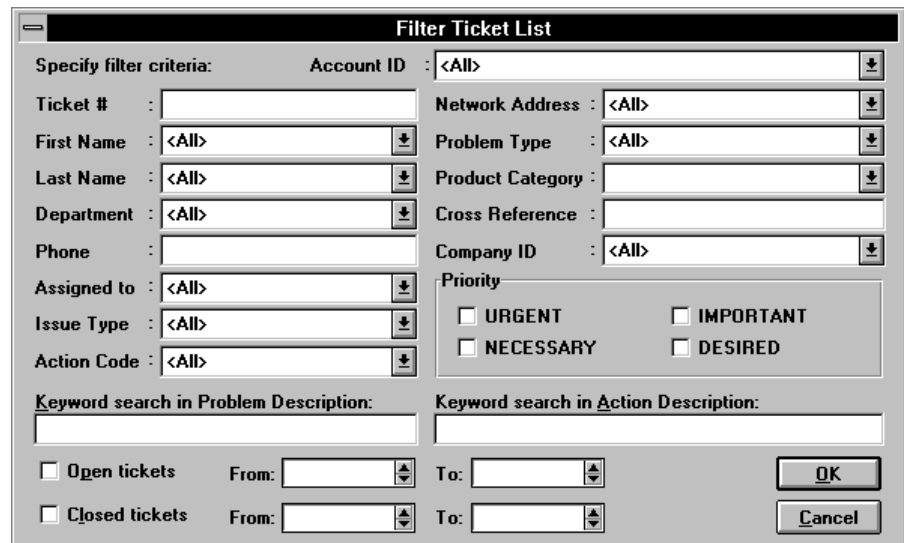
The Add View Name dialog box displays, as in Figure 7-6.



The 'Add View Name' dialog box has a title bar with the text 'Add View Name'. Below the title bar is a section labeled 'View Details'. Inside this section, there is a text field labeled 'View Name:'. Below the text field are two buttons: 'Filter...' and 'Sort...'. To the right of these buttons is a checkbox labeled 'Include on Menu'. At the bottom of the dialog box are two buttons: 'OK' and 'Cancel'.

Figure 7-6: Defining the New View

3. In the View Name field, type the name to be assigned to the new view.  
All typed characters are valid. The view name is automatically entered as uppercase.
4. To define the filter criteria for the new view, choose the Filter button.  
The Filter Ticket List dialog box displays, as in Figure 7-7.



The 'Filter Ticket List' dialog box has a title bar with the text 'Filter Ticket List'. Below the title bar is a section labeled 'Specify filter criteria:'. This section contains several fields and checkboxes. On the left, there are fields for 'Ticket #', 'First Name', 'Last Name', 'Department', 'Phone', 'Assigned to', 'Issue Type', and 'Action Code', each with a dropdown arrow. On the right, there are fields for 'Account ID', 'Network Address', 'Problem Type', 'Product Category', 'Cross Reference', and 'Company ID', each with a dropdown arrow. Below these fields are four checkboxes for 'Priority': 'URGENT', 'IMPORTANT', 'NECESSARY', and 'DESIRED'. At the bottom, there are two text fields for 'Keyword search in Problem Description:' and 'Keyword search in Action Description:'. Below these fields are two rows of checkboxes for 'Open tickets' and 'Closed tickets', each with 'From:' and 'To:' dropdown arrows. At the bottom right are two buttons: 'OK' and 'Cancel'.

Figure 7-7: Defining Filter Criteria for a Custom View

5. Define the filter criteria, and choose the OK button.  
Detailed procedures for defining filter criteria are discussed on page 135. Upon pressing the OK button, you are returned to the Add View Name dialog box.
6. To define the sort order for the new view, choose the Sort button.

The Select Sort Criteria dialog box displays, as in Figure 7-8.

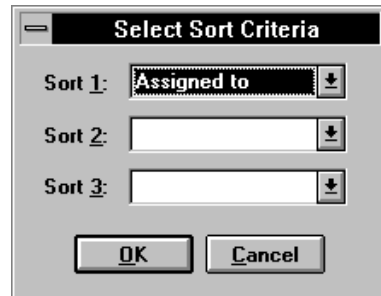


Figure 7-8: Defining Sort Criteria for a Custom View

7. Define the sort order, and choose the OK button.

Detailed procedures for defining sort order are discussed on page 140. Upon pressing the OK button, you are returned to the Add View Name dialog box.

8. To include the new view name on the LSC View menu, check the Include on Menu option.

Click in the option box to place a checkmark in the box and enable the option. Including the view name on the View menu allows for quick access to the view.

In Figure 7-9, KAREN'S VIEW has been included on the View menu.

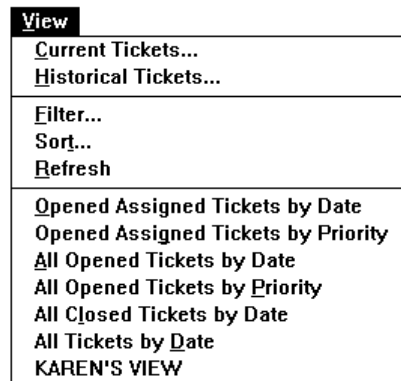


Figure 7-9: A Custom View Added to the View Menu

---

**NOTE:**

**Selecting the Include on Menu option will cause the view name to display on all LSC users' View menus.**

---

9. Choose the OK button.

The new view is added to the list of views in the Custom View Settings dialog box.

## Maintaining Custom Ticket Views

Custom ticket views can be edited and/or deleted. Because support staff job responsibilities and requirements often change, the filter and sort criteria of the custom views may need to be modified.

Use the following procedure to delete and/or modify custom ticket views.

1. Choose the Custom View Settings command from the Administration menu.  
The Custom View Settings dialog box displays listing the custom views that have been defined.
2. To delete a custom view, highlight the view name and choose the Delete button.  
A prompt displays asking you to confirm the delete action. Choose the Yes button to delete the selected view. (Choose the No button to cancel the delete action.)  
The custom view is deleted from LSC. The view name is removed from the list of views in the Custom View Settings dialog box, and it will no longer display on the View menu.
3. To edit custom view settings, highlight the custom view name and choose the Edit button.

You can also double click on the view name to be edited. The Edit View Name dialog box displays, as in Figure 7-10. The name of the selected view is automatically entered into the View Name field.



Figure 7-10: Editing a Custom View

4. Edit the view criteria.

The View Name, Filter criteria, Sort order and Include on Menu definitions can be modified.

a - To edit the view name, move the typing cursor into the View Name field and enter a new name for the custom view. (When the Edit View Name dialog box first displays, the entry in the View Name field is highlighted. Typing a new name will erase the highlighted name and enter the characters you type.)

b - To edit the filter definition, choose the Filter button. The Filter Ticket List dialog box displays showing the view's defined filter criteria. Make any changes to the filter definition, and choose the OK button.

c - To edit the sort order, choose the Sort button. The Select Sort Criteria dialog box displays showing the view's defined sort order. Make any changes to the sort order, and choose the OK button.

d - To include/exclude the view name from the View menu, select/deselect the Include on Menu option. This option box toggles on and off when selected.

5. After all modifications are made, choose the OK button.

You are returned to the Custom View Settings dialog box. Any changes to the view name are reflected in the View Names list.

6. To apply the edited view to the View Tickets window, choose the View button. The View Tickets window displays with the selected view.

---

## Ticket Databases

To facilitate efficient disk space usage, LSC lets you archive tickets. Based on any number of filtering criteria, tickets can be tagged and moved out of the current database file and into an “historical” database file. (The procedure for archiving tickets is discussed in “Archiving and Restoring Tickets” in Chapter 5.)

Historical database files are not compressed, and therefore, support staff members can access tickets that are maintained in either the “current database” or an “historical database.” The database used during the support staff’s daily operation is the current database. New tickets are added to the current database, and open or active tickets are maintained in the current database. A historical database may be referenced for investigative or problem research purposes.

The procedures for loading an historical database and the current database are discussed in this section.

## Viewing Historical Tickets

Use the following procedure to access the tickets maintained in an historical ticket database file.

---

### NOTES:

**a - Historical database files are created upon ticket archiving. Therefore, the following procedure can only be performed if you have already archived tickets. Refer to “Archiving and Restoring Tickets” in Chapter 5.**

**b - LSC allows you to view either the current or a historical database. Before you switch from one to the other, you need to close all ticket windows to prevent database corruption.**

---

1. Choose the Historical Tickets command from the View menu.

The Choose Historical Database to View dialog box displays, as in Figure 7-11.

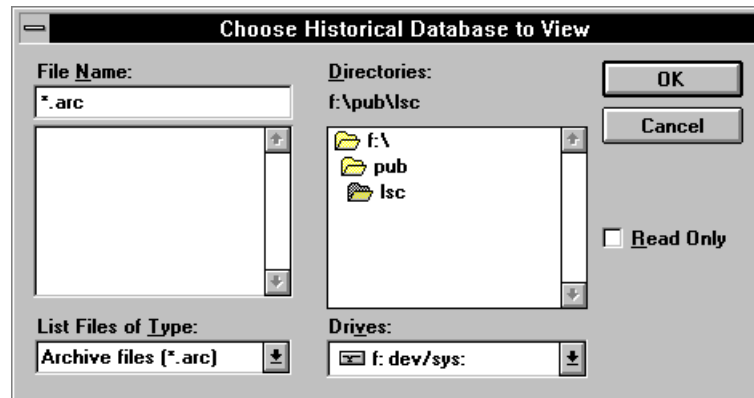


Figure 7-11: Loading an Historical Database

2. Make selections from the Directories and Drives lists to find the archived file to view.

For example, choose the Drives down arrow button, and click on Drive G: to display the directories on drive G. Then click on a directory name to display the list of files it maintains.

By default, \*.ARC will display in the File Name field, thereby instructing LSC to list all files in the selected directory that have the extension \*.ARC. You can modify this field entry if you have saved the historical file with a different extension (e.g., \*.old).

3. Select a file from the File Name list.

Click on a file name to enter the name into the File Name field.

4. To mark the historical file as Read Only, enable the Read Only option.

Placing a checkmark in this field will prohibit any changes to be made to the tickets in the historical file.

---

**NOTE:**

**To avoid inadvertently making changes to a historical database file, it is highly recommended that you mark the file as Read Only when selecting the historical file to be viewed.**

---

5. Choose the OK button.

The tickets in the selected historical database file are listed in the View Historical Tickets window, as in Figure 7-12.

**NOTE:**

**The historical ticket information will display according to the currently defined filter criteria and sorting options. To view all tickets in the historical database file, make sure that filter criteria is not applied to the View Tickets window.**

View Historical Tickets								
Ticket #	Account ID	Last Name	First Name	Department	Opened Date	Closed Date	Priority	Assigned to
LSC940215111259	BLUE RIBBON	LEECH	MARY	SALES	1992/05/15	1992/05/20	URGENT	GKG
LSC940215140442	BLUE RIBBON	LEECH	MARY	SALES	1993/08/15	1993/10/20	URGENT	HYE
LSC940216100320	BLUE RIBBON	LEECH	MARY	SALES	1993/12/16	1993/12/31	NECESSARY	LSC
LSC940215133326	BLUE RIBBON	LEECH	MARY	SALES	1994/02/15	1994/02/16	IMPORTANT	HYE
Action Code	Date	Time	Person	Time Spent	Description			
SOLVED	1993/12/31	12:10	KRN		SENT A NEW MOUSE DRIVER - PROBLEM SOLVED!			

Figure 7-12: Viewing an Historical Ticket Database

## Viewing Current Tickets

After viewing tickets in a historical database file, choose the Current Tickets command from the View menu to view the tickets in the current LSC database. The tickets in the current database will display in the View Tickets window.

**NOTES:**

**a - The current ticket information will display according to the currently defined filter criteria and sorting options. To view all tickets in the current database file, make sure that filter criteria is not applied to the View Tickets window.**

**b - LSC allows you to view either the current or a historical database. Before you switch from one to the other, you need to close all ticket windows to prevent database corruption.**

This ends the chapter on viewing ticket information. Refer to the next chapter for instructions on generating reports based on the ticket information being maintained by LSC.

## Chapter 8 LSC Reports

The previous chapter explained the various methods available for viewing ticket information. This chapter discusses LSC's reporting module and presents instructions for generating reports based on the ticket information being maintained.

### Introduction

#### What's in this Chapter

LSC is shipped with several pre-defined reports called "style sheets." The style sheets represent frequently requested reports which can also be customized to accommodate a specific need. By performing a "query," the information included in a report can be filtered according to virtually any combination of data values. For example, generating a report based on the All Tickets List by Date style sheet includes all tickets being maintained in the current LSC database. The information contained in the report can be filtered to include only the open tickets regarding printing problems specific to the Lotus spreadsheet. Queries can be saved and attached to any number of style sheets.

In addition to customizing the pre-defined style sheets, reports that are created using the Crystal Reports software can be added into the LSC system. These added reports can be customized, renamed and/or deleted.

NOTE:

**The Crystal Reports software is installed using the LSC install procedure. A Crystal Reports program icon is added to the McAfee Program Manager group. Procedures for using Crystal Reports are presented in Part Two of this manual.**

The following chart describes the sections in this chapter:

SECTION	DESCRIPTION
Using Pre-defined Report Style Sheets	Provides the procedures for generating pre-defined reports and selecting an output option.

Using Queries to Customize Reports	Provides the procedures for creating queries to filter report data, applying queries to reports and saving the report under a new name.
Adding New Reports	Provides the procedures for adding and managing new reports.
Sample Reports	Describes the contents of the pre-defined LSC reports and provides an illustration of each report type.

---

## Using Pre-defined Report Style Sheets

The pre-defined style sheets supplied with LSC represent frequently requested reports. A pre-defined report can be generated “as is,” or it can be customized by applying queries which further define the data to be included in the report.

This section lists the procedures for generating the reports listed in the Choose Reports dialog box. (The procedures for creating, applying and managing queries are discussed in the next section of this chapter.)

---

### NOTES:

**a - The pre-defined LSC report style sheets cannot be renamed or deleted.**

**b - If you have modified the LSC database labels, the report names listed in the Choose Report dialog box will reflect the current labels.**

---

## Printing Reports

Use the following procedure to generate the reports listed in the Choose Reports dialog box. (Refer to the other sections in this chapter for procedures on customizing the reports.)

1. Choose the Reports tool bar button.

You can also choose the Choose Reports command from the Reports menu. The Choose Report dialog box displays, as in Figure 8-1.

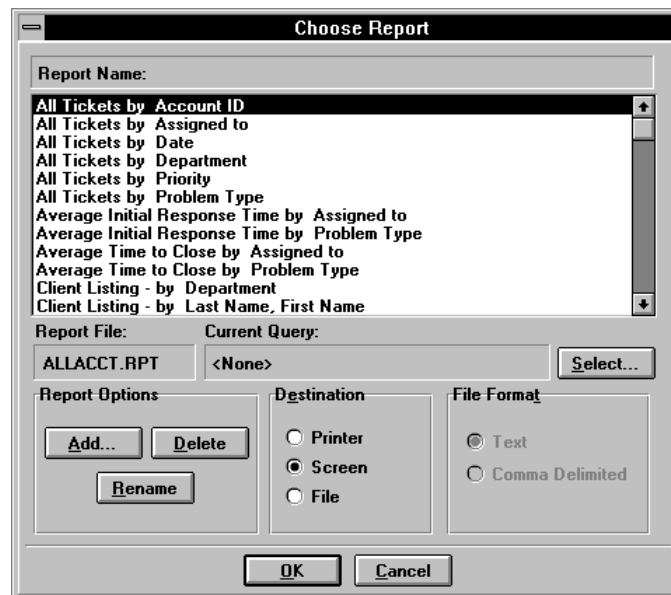


Figure 8-1: Choosing a Report to Print

2. From the list of Report Names, select the report you want to generate.  
Your selection is highlighted. The default selection is the first report name in the list.
3. Select the report's destination.

The following destinations are available:

- ☐ **Printer** - Sends the report to the printer and uses the currently defined Printer Setup parameters. (Refer to "Printer Setup and Administration" in Chapter 5 for instructions on administering your print setup.)
- ☐ **Screen** - Sends the report to a window on your screen. Use the scroll bars to scroll through the report contents. If desired, choose the Print Report command from the File menu to send the report to the printer. Double click on the control menu button in the report window to close the window when you are finished.
- ☐ **File** - Sends the report to a file. When this option is selected, the File Format options become available. The format options are:
  - **Text** - output file is saved in ASCII format.
  - **Comma Delimited** - output file is saved in a comma delimited format in which commas are used to separate the fields.

4. Choose the OK button to initiate the creation of the report.

A Printing dialog box displays indicating the status of the report generation.

---

**NOTES ON PRINTING:**

**a - If the report is sent to a file, you are prompted to enter a file name. Enter the file name and destination, and choose the OK button. The Printing dialog box displays even if the report is being sent to a file.**

**b - If the report is sent to the screen, the resulting report displays in a Crystal Reports dialog box. The buttons at the top of the dialog box from left to right can be chosen for page scroll to first page, previous page, next page, last page, stop scroll, page magnification and route report to printer. For detailed instructions on using the Crystal Reports software, refer to Part Two of this manual.**

**c - After a report has been sent to the screen, choose the Print Report command from the File menu to send the report to the printer. (The report window must be open or minimized for the command to work.)**

**d - If the report is sent to the printer, a “background report” is automatically printed after the selected report. The background report lists the queries that have been applied to the selected report.**

**e - Temporary files are created when reports are generated and routed to the screen or to a printer. As a result, if you have limited system resources (e.g., disk space or system memory), it is recommended that you apply a query to the report to narrow down the number of applicable records. Refer to the procedures on page 156 for instructions on applying a query to a report.**

**f - You must be captured to a queue when printing on a network.**

---



---

## Using Queries to Customize Reports

Queries can be defined and applied against a report to act as a filter for the data gathered from the LSC database. Queries can be saved and applied to any number of reports.

This section lists the procedures for:

- ☐ Applying a query to a report
- ☐ Customizing report style sheets
- ☐ Removing a query from a report
- ☐ Creating a new query

- ☐ Editing a query
- ☐ Deleting a query

## Applying a Query to a Report

Use the procedure below to apply an existing query to a report.

1. Choose the Report tool bar button.

The Choose Report dialog box displays, as in Figure 8-2.

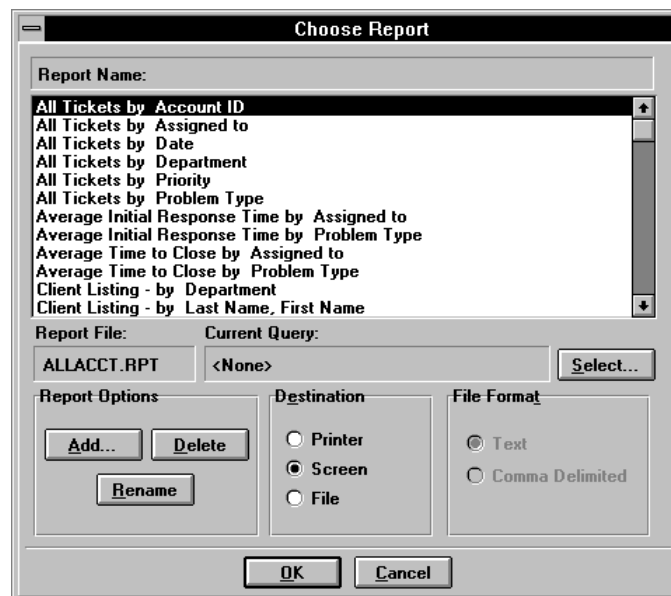


Figure 8-2: Choosing a Report to Print

2. From the list of Report Names, select the report to which you want to apply a query.

Your selection is highlighted, and the Current Query field displays the name of the query currently applied to the selected report.

---

NOTE:

**The <None> entry in the Current Query field indicates that no query is currently applied to the report.**

---

3. Choose the Select button to the right of the Current Query field.

The Select Query dialog box displays listing all queries, as in Figure 8-3. (Refer to page 159 for instructions on creating new queries if only the <None> entry appears in this list.)

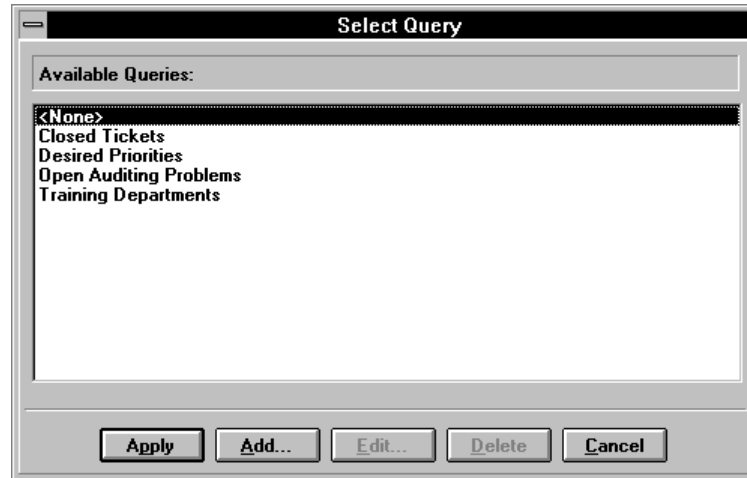


Figure 8-3: Selecting a Query to Apply to a Report

4. Select the query name from the Available Queries list, and choose the Apply button.

To select a query name, point to the query and click the left mouse button. Upon choosing the Apply button, the Select Query dialog box closes and the selected query name is placed into the Current Query field of the Choose Report dialog box. The LSC database records are sorted, and only the records that match the query's specified filter criteria will be included when the report is generated.

---

**NOTE:**

**Before applying a query, make sure that the correct report name is highlighted in the Choose Report dialog box.**

---

## Customizing Report Style Sheets

A pre-defined LSC report can be customized by first assigning a unique name to the report and then applying a query which filters the data to be included in the new report.

---

**NOTE:**

---

---

**For instructions on using the Crystal Reports software to create new inventory and distribution reports, refer to Part Two of this manual. For instructions on incorporating the new Crystal reports into LSC, refer to page 163.**

---

Use the following procedure to customize a pre-defined style sheet.

1. From the list of Report Names in the Choose Report dialog box, select the report on which you want to base the new report.

Select a report that consists of fields and data which are similar to the report to be created.

2. Choose the Add button in the Choose Report dialog box.

The New Report dialog box displays, as in Figure 8-4.

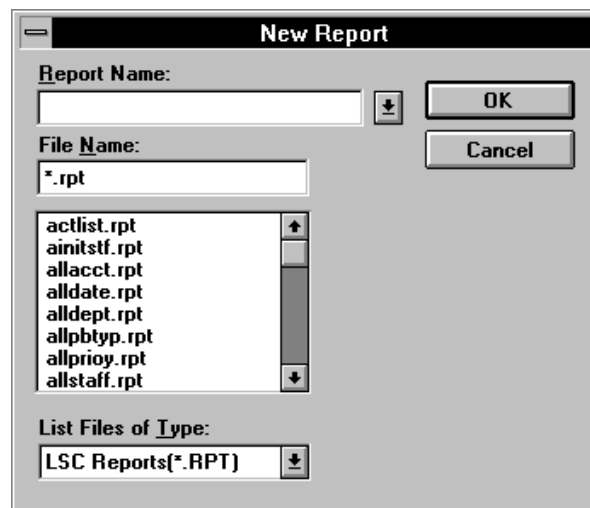


Figure 8-4: Naming a Customized Report

3. Enter a new unique name in the Report Name field.

The report name must be unique.

4. Select a file name to be associated with the new report.

All report files in your LSC program directory are listed below the File Name field. Because the new report is to be based on the report selected in the Choose Report dialog box, click on the file name of the selected report. (The list of reports and their file names are provided on page 165.)

For example, if you were customizing the Open Tickets by Date report, then you would select the OPNDATE.RPT file name.

5. Choose the OK button to save the new report information.

The New Report dialog box closes. The new report name is added to the list of reports in the Choose Report dialog box.

At this point, the new report contains the same information as the report on which it is based. Applying a query to the report will customize the data to be included in the new report. Refer to the procedure on page 156 entitled “Applying a Query to a Report.”

## Removing a Query from a Report

Use the following procedure to remove a query from a report.

1. From the list of Report Names in the Choose Report dialog box, select the report for which you want to remove the query.

Your selection is highlighted, and the Current Query field displays the name of the query currently applied to the selected report.

2. Choose the Select button to the right of the Current Query field.

The Select Query dialog box displays.

3. Select the <None> query name, and choose the Apply button.

The Select Query dialog box closes. The filter criteria is removed and all records that apply to the report will be included when the report is generated.

## Creating a New Query

Use the following procedure to create a new query. The procedure assumes that you have already chosen the Select button in the Choose Report dialog box to display the Select Query dialog box.

1. Choose the Add button in the Select Query dialog box.

The Add Query dialog box displays, as in Figure 8-5. Press the <TAB> key to move from field to field within this dialog box.

Figure 8-5: Defining a Query

2. Enter a Query Name and define a filter entry.

The purpose of each filter entry is to narrow down the list of records to be included in a report. If more than one filter entry is defined, the entries are “linked” using either the AND or OR relationships.

For example, assume the following two filter entries:

Assign To = DAN

Action Code = Callback

If the entries are linked with the AND relationship, only the tickets that satisfy *both* criteria (i.e., all tickets assigned to Dan which have the callback action code) are included in the report definition.

If the entries are linked with the OR relationship, the tickets that satisfy *either* criteria (i.e., all tickets assigned to Dan and all tickets with the callback action) are included in the report definition.

For each filter entry, specify the following:

- ☐ **Query Name** - Enter a query name up to 80 characters in length.
- ☐ **Component** - Choose a component from the LSC database to use as the filter basis. Select a component from the drop-down list associated with this field (e.g., Action, Cross Reference, Ticket #).
- ☐ **Operator** - Choose an operator from the drop-down list associated with this field (e.g., = - equal to, < - less than, <> - not equal to).

- ☐ **Description** - If desired, choose a description of the component from the drop-down list associated with this field. The items which are included in this list depend on the selected component. For example, “Desired” and “Urgent” display as Descriptions if Priority is entered in the Component field; “True” and “False” display if Ticket Closed is entered in the Component field.
- ☐ **Query Link** - Specify the relationship between the filter entries (e.g., Assigned To = DAN OR Action = Callback). The link options are AND and OR.

---

NOTE:

**All filter entries in a query must have the same Query Link type (e.g., all entries will be linked by AND or all entries will be linked by OR).**

---

3. Choose the Insert button to accept the filter entry definition.

The entry is added to the Current Query list in the Edit Query dialog box. The Edit Query dialog box should look similar to Figure 8-6 below.

Figure 8-6: The Filter Criteria for a Query

4. If required, insert additional filter entries.

Repeat steps #2 and #3 above.

---

**NOTE:**

**To add a filter entry between existing entries, first highlight the filter entry line in the Current Query list where you want the new entry to be placed. The new defined entry is placed in the highlighted position.**

---

5. When all filter entries are defined, choose the Save button.

The query is saved and added to the Available Queries list in the Select Query dialog box. The new query can now be applied to a report.

## Editing a Query

Use the following procedure to edit the definition of an existing query. The procedure assumes that you have already chosen the Select button in the Choose Report dialog box to display the Select Query dialog box.

1. Select a query from the Select Query dialog box, and choose the Edit button.

The Edit Query dialog box displays showing the query's filter entries.

2. Modify the information, and choose the Save button.

For instructions on modifying the filter entries, follow the procedure above entitled "Creating a New Query."

To delete a filter entry, highlight the entry in the Current Query List and choose the Delete button.

---

NOTE:

**To add a filter entry between existing entries, first highlight the filter entry line in the Current Query List where you want the new entry to be placed. The new defined entry is placed in the highlighted position.**

---

## Deleting a Query

Use the following procedure to delete an existing query. The procedure assumes that you have already chosen the Select button in the Choose Report dialog box to display the Select Query dialog box.

1. Select the query to be deleted from the Select Query dialog box, and choose the Delete button.

A prompt displays asking you to verify the delete action. Choose the Yes button to delete the query. Choose No to cancel the delete action. The query is removed from the Available Queries list.

---

NOTE:

**Queries that are currently applied to an LSC report can be deleted.**

---



---

## Adding New Reports

Additional reports can be incorporated into LSC through the use of the Crystal Reports software. Queries can also be applied to the new reports, and once added, the reports can be renamed and/or deleted.

---

NOTE:

**The Crystal Reports software is installed using the LSC install procedure. A Crystal Reports program icon is added to the McAfee Program Manager group. Procedures for using Crystal Reports are presented in Part Two of this manual.**

---

## Adding Reports

New reports that have been created using the Crystal Reports software can be added into LSC by using the following procedure. All report files (.RPT) must be located in the LSC program directory.

Use the following procedure to add a new report into LSC.

1. Choose the Reports tool bar button.

The Choose Report dialog box displays.

2. Choose the Add button.

The New Report dialog box displays.

3. Enter the Report Name of the report to be added.

The name entered in this field is the name that will display in the Choose Report dialog box.

4. Select the File Name, and choose the OK button.

Select the .RPT file name to be added into LSC. (The .RPT files that display are located in the LSC program directory.) The selected file will be associated with the Report Name.

## Renaming Added Reports

Use the following procedure to rename a Crystal report that has been added into LSC.

1. Choose the Reports tool bar button.

The Choose Report dialog box displays.

2. From the list of Report Names, select the report to be renamed and choose the Rename button.

The Rename Report dialog box displays prompting you to enter a new report name.

3. Enter the new report name, and choose the OK button.

The new report name displays in the Choose Report dialog box, and the old name is removed. All attributes of the old report are preserved in the renamed report (i.e., the report contents and applied query do not change).

## Deleting Reports

Use the following procedure to delete a Crystal report that has been added into LSC.

---

NOTE:

**A pre-defined LSC report style sheet cannot be deleted; however, a report that was created using the Crystal Reports software and then added into LSC can be deleted.**

---

1. Choose the Reports tool bar button.  
The Choose Report dialog box displays.
2. From the list of Report Names, select the report to be deleted and choose the Delete button.  
A prompt displays asking you to confirm the deletion.
3. Choose the Yes button to delete the report.  
Choose the No button to cancel the delete action.  
If deleted, the report name is removed from the Choose Report dialog box.

---

## Sample Reports

There are several categories of pre-defined reports included with LSC. This section discusses the types of report categories and provides a sample window which illustrates the report contents.

---

NOTE:

**If you have modified the LSC database labels, the report names and fields will reflect the current labels.**

---

The report categories include:

- ☐ All Ticket Listings
- ☐ Averaging Reports
- ☐ Client Listings
- ☐ Closed Ticket Listings
- ☐ Open Ticket Listings
- ☐ Miscellaneous Reports

## All Ticket Listings

The reports in this category include:

Report Name	File Name
All Tickets by Account ID	ALLACCT.RPT
All Tickets by Assigned To	ALLSTAFF.RPT
All Tickets by Date	ALLDATE.RPT
All Tickets by Department	ALLDEPT.RPT
All Tickets by Priority	ALLPRIOY.RPT
All Tickets by Problem Type	ALLPBTYP.RPT

Each report is primarily categorized by the label in its name (e.g., by account ID, by date or by priority). All tickets are then listed in ascending ticket number order.

Figure 8-7 illustrates the All Tickets by Priority report.

Date: 1994/01/12				Page #		1
All Tickets by Priority						
Ticket #	Closed	Name	Phone	Assigned to	Problem Type	Product Category
URGENT						
DAN930930110516	Yes	MC GEE, FRED	333-555-5544	DAN	HARDWARE	MONITOR
LSC940222142933	No	MC GEE, FRED	333-555-5544	LSC	MODEM	1200 BAUD
LSC940222143519	No	MITCHELL, TINA	516-999-3434	LSC	PRINTER	CARTRIDGE
YEE930930110903	No	PIERCE, MATTHEW		YEE	MOUSE	DRIVER
YEE940112111341	No	PIERCE, MATTHEW		YEE	DRIVE	HARD DRIVE
Total:		5 ticket(s)				
IMPORTANT						
DAN931110110307	Yes	THOMPSON, MARY		DAN	CBT	COMPUTER TRAINING PACKA
Total:		1 ticket(s)				
DESIRED						
LSC940222134937	No	MC GEE, FRED	333-555-5544	LSC	PRINTER	CARTRIDGE
Total:		1 ticket(s)				
Grand Total:		7 ticket(s)				

Figure 8-7: All Tickets by Priority Report

## Averaging Reports

The reports in this category include:

Report Name	File Name
Average Initial Response Time by Assigned To	AINITSTF.RPT
Average Initial Response Time by Problem Type	AVEINIT.RPT
Average Time to Close by Assigned To	AVESTAFF.RPT
Average Time to Close by Problem Type	AVEPBTYP.RPT

Both Average Initial Response reports indicate the average time required for an initial action to be performed for a ticket.

The Average Time to Close reports indicate the average time required for the tickets to be closed.

Figure 8-8 illustrates the Average Initial Response Time by Problem Type report.

Date: 1994/01/12

Page # 1

Average Initial Response Time by Problem Type			
Problem Type	# of Tickets	Total Time Elapsed Until Initial Response (DAY:HR:MIN)	Average Time for Initial Response (DAY:HR:MIN)
HARDWARE	3	104:00:00	34:16:00
MODEM	1	41:00:00	41:00:00
PRINTER	1	0:00:36	0:00:36
TOTALS:	5	145:00:36	29:00:07

Figure 8-8: Average Initial Response Time by Problem Type Report

## Client Listings

The reports in this category include:

Report Name	File Name
Client Listing by Department	CLEDEPT.RPT
Client Listing by Name	CLENAME.RPT

Each report lists the detail information for the contact names assigned to an account. Figure 8-9 illustrates the Client Listing by Name report.

Date: 1994/03/07			Page # 1
Client Listing - Alphabetical by Last Name, First Name			
Name	Department	Phone	Network Address
MCGEE, FRED	ACCOUNTING	333-555-5544	
Account ID : PAPER SUPPLY Company ID : PAPER SUPPLY Address Line 1 : 100 WHITE PAPER AVE Address Line 2 : P.O. BOX 77 City, State, Zip : MINTON, IL 23001 Country : USA Fax Number : 101-332-0389 Email :			
MITCHELL, TINA	SALES	516-999-3434	
Account ID : COMPUTER, ETC. Company ID : COMP Address Line 1 : 8654 3RD STREET Address Line 2 : P.O. BOX 2001 City, State, Zip : LITTLETOWN, MO 45333 Country : USA Fax Number : Email :			

Figure 8-9: Client Listing by Name Report

## Closed Ticket Listings

The reports in this category include:

Report Name	File Name
Closed Tickets by Assigned To	CLSSTAFF.RPT
Closed Tickets by Date	CLSDATE.RPT
Closed Tickets by Department	CLSDEPT.RPT
Closed Tickets by Priority	CLSPRIOY.RPT
Closed Tickets by Problem Type	CLSPBTYP.RPT

Each report is primarily categorized by the label in its name (e.g., by date, by department or by priority). All closed tickets are then listed in ascending ticket number order. Figure 8-10 illustrates the Closed Tickets by Priority report.

Date: 1994/02/23

Page # 1

Closed Tickets by Priority					
Ticket #	Name	Phone	Assigned to Problem Type		Product Category
URGENT					
DAN930930110516	MC GEE, FRED	333-555-5544	DAN	HARDWARE	MONITOR
LSC940222142933	MC GEE, FRED	333-555-5544	LSC	MODEM	1200 BAUD
YEE930930110903	PIERCE, MATTHEW		YEE	MOUSE	DRIVER
YEE940112111341	PIERCE, MATTHEW		YEE	DRIVE	HARD DRIVE
YEE940112113013	PIERCE, MATTHEW		YEE	HARDWARE	MONITOR
YEE940112113031	PIERCE, MATTHEW		YEE	HARDWARE	MONITOR
YEE940112113046	THOMPSON, MARY	705-340-0002	YEE	CBT	COMPUTER TRAINING PACKAC
Total: 7 ticket(s)					
IMPORTANT					
DAN931110110307	THOMPSON, MARY		DAN	CBT	COMPUTER TRAINING PACKAC
Total: 1 ticket(s)					
DESIRED					
LSC940222134937	MC GEE, FRED	333-555-5544	DAN	PRINTER	CARTRIDGE
Total: 1 ticket(s)					
Grand Total: 9 ticket(s)					

Figure 8-10: Closed Tickets by Priority Report

## Open Ticket Listings

The reports in this category include:

Report Name	File Name
Open Tickets by Assigned To	OPNSTAFF.RPT
Open Tickets by Date	OPNDATE.RPT
Open Tickets by Department	OPNDEPT.RPT
Open Tickets by Priority	OPNNPRIOY.RPT
Open Tickets by Problem Type	OPNPBTYP.RPT

Each report is primarily categorized by the label in its name (e.g., by date, by department or by priority). All open tickets are then listed in ascending ticket number order. Figure 8-11 illustrates the Open Tickets by Assigned To report.

Date: 1994/03/07				Page #	1
Opened Tickets List by Assigned to					
Ticket #	Name	Phone	Problem Type	Product Category	
<u>DP</u>					
<i>Priority = NECESSARY</i>					
LSC940225150407	FOSGREEN, MAUREEN	(609)370-6630	PRINTER	POSTSCRIPT	
Total: 1 ticket(s)					
<u>JJ</u>					
<i>Priority = URGENT</i>					
LSC940225145330	URGO, GEORGE	(908)373-0986	DAMAGED	HARDWARE	
Total: 1 ticket(s)					
<b>Grand Total: 2 ticket(s)</b>					

Figure 8-11: Open Tickets by Assigned To Report

## Miscellaneous Reports

The reports in this category include:

Report Name	File Name	Description
Daily Action Listing by Person	ACTLIST.RPT	Categorized by LSC staff member and then by ticket action code.
Monthly Statistics by Problem Type	MONPBTYP.RPT	Categorized by problem type; lists statistics for the current month.
Monthly Ticket Load Statistics by Problem Type	MONTCKT.RPT	Categorized by problem type; lists the number of new, opened and closed tickets for the current month.
Ticket Details	TCKETDET.RPT	Lists the details for each ticket. Each ticket detail is listed on its own page. Use the buttons at the top of the report window to scroll through the list.

Figure 8-12 illustrates one page of the Ticket Details report.

Date: 1994/02/23
Page # 6

**Ticket Details for # YEE930930110903**

Contact Information  
Account ID : JOHNSON IMPORTING  
Name : PIERCE, MATTHEW

Assigned to : DAN  
Close (Y or N) : N  
Issue Type : INFO  
Priority : IMPORTANT

Date Opened : 1993/09/30  
Date Closed :  
Time Opened : 11:09  
Time Closed :

Problem Type : MOUSE  
Product Category : DRIVER  
Network Address : 000000AA:0080AD0025DB

Problem Description  
Mouse driver is not automatically loaded at start-up.

Department : ACCOUNTING  
Phone : 303-111-8346  
Address :

Action Code : TELEPHONED  
Time Spent :  
Initial Response (Y or N): Y

Action Date: 1993/09/30  
Action Time: 14:38

Action Description:  
check batch file which loads mouse driver- it's not working.

Action Code : SOLVED  
Time Spent : 10:01  
Initial Response (Y or N): N

Action Date: 1993/10/01  
Action Time: 14:39

Action Description:  
Updated driver batch file.

Figure 8-12: The Ticket Details Report

***Part Two:***  
***Using Crystal Reports***

---

# Notes

---

## Chapter 9 Introduction to Crystal Reports

This chapter introduces Crystal Reports, shows you how to start the program, introduces you to some of the things the program can do, and familiarizes you with some of the “nuts and bolts” of using the program.

---

### About This Part of the Manual

This part of the manual contains all of the information you should need for building reports quickly and easily using Crystal Reports. It is divided into three appendices:

Chapter	Description
Chapter 9: <b>Introduction to Crystal Reports</b>	Introduction gives you a brief overview of Crystal Reports. It familiarizes you with the Crystal Reports screens, using the mouse, error messages, and the help facility.
Chapter 10: <b>Using Crystal Reports</b>	This chapter conceptually leads you through the process of creating a report with Crystal Reports. It suggests a methodology for creating reports starting with nothing more than a one sentence statement of purpose for the report.
Chapter 11: <b>Practical Crystal Reports</b>	Practical Crystal Reports is a “How to” chapter. It contains a variety of report creation topics and additional information on the practical aspects of using Crystal Reports to solve typical reporting problems.

For information on topics not found in these appendices, refer to the Crystal Reports Help system.

This part of the manual assumes that you understand the basic concepts and usage of Microsoft DOS or PC-DOS, and Windows 3.0 or higher. The procedures also assume that you will be using a mouse in the creation of your reports. While the instructions occasionally indicate keyboard methods for using the program, the instructions are generally mouse-oriented since most Windows users have a mouse.

## Special Notations Used in this Part

The following notations are used throughout this part of the manual:

- ❑ *Delete* means the Del key on your numeric keypad.
- ❑ *Escape* means the Escape or Esc key on your keyboard.
- ❑ *Enter* means the Enter, Return, CR or ↵ key, depending on which of these keys appears on your keyboard.
- ❑ *Click* means to click the left mouse button one time.
- ❑ *Double click* means to click the left mouse button twice, in quick succession.
- ❑ The term *Cursor Keys* means the Pg Up, Pg Dn, and Arrow Up, Arrow Down, Arrow Right, Arrow Left, Home, and End keys on your numeric keypad.
- ❑ *Ctrl+Key*, *Shift+Key*, and *Alt+Key* are examples of the notation for two key combinations. They mean to press the first key in the combination (*Control*, *Shift*, or *Alt*), and, while keeping it depressed, to press the second key in the combination (designated as *Key*).
- ❑ Text enclosed in double brackets (for example, « *information* » ) is intended to expand or explain the information that it follows.
- ❑ Field names in formulas are *italicized*.
- ❑ Insert|Formula means to select the Formula option from the Insert menu.
- ❑ Drag, when used in talking about field boxes, means to position the cursor on a field box, depress the left mouse button, and keep the button depressed while moving the field to a new position.
- ❑ Drag, when used in talking about text, means to depress the left mouse button and, while it is depressed, move the I-beam cursor across the text of interest to highlight and thus select it.
- ❑ Computer type indicates data that you are to enter using the computer keyboard. It is also used to show example formulas.

---

## Starting Crystal Reports

You can start Crystal Reports in two ways:

- ☐ from the DOS command line
- ☐ from the Windows environment.

### From DOS

To start Crystal Reports (and Windows at the same time) from the DOS command line, type:

```
cd
```

and the name of the directory into which you installed Crystal Reports. For example, if you installed Crystal Reports in the default Crystal Reports directory, type:

```
cd \CRW
```

and then press Enter.

At the prompt, type:

```
win CRW
```

and press Enter. Windows and Crystal Reports are both started.

### From Windows

Once in Windows, select the group window that holds the Crystal Reports icon.

- ☐ If you're using a mouse, double click on the Crystal Reports icon to start the program.
- ☐ If you're using the keyboard, use the arrow keys to select the icon and then press Enter.

You can also start Crystal Reports from within Windows by double clicking on the file name *CRW.EXE* in the File Manager.

## The Crystal Reports Registration Dialog Box

The Crystal Reports Registration dialog box appears whenever you start Crystal Reports unless you have registered your copy of the program with the company, received a serial number, and entered it in the *Enter serial number...* edit box to disable this opening dialog box.

There are two good reasons to register your copy of Crystal Reports:

- ☐ Registration entitles you to technical support should you ever require assistance in using the product.
- ☐ Registration assures you that you will be notified whenever the product is upgraded to offer new features, benefits, and efficiencies.

The Crystal Reports Registration dialog box options are as follows:

Enter serial number... edit box	Use this edit box to enter the serial number that Crystal Services sends you when you register the program. Be careful to enter the serial number correctly.
Proceed to Crystal Reports button	Use this button to close out the dialog box and go directly into the Crystal Reports program. The button will be useful until you receive and enter your registration serial number. At that time the Crystal Reports Registration dialog box will no longer appear when you start the program.
Edit Registration Info button	Use this button to enter/edit product registration information. The Edit Registration Info button takes you to the Crystal Reports Registration dialog box. Use this dialog box to enter your name, company name, and phone and fax numbers. Crystal Reports stores this information and displays it and/or prints it out automatically when you print out the registration form, call up system information (via the Help System Information command), or send in a technical support request (via the Help Technical Support Request command).

Print Registration Form button	Use this button to print a copy of the completed registration form.
--------------------------------	---

## How to Register Your Copy of Crystal Reports

Use the following procedure to register your copy of Crystal Reports.

1. Click the Edit Registration Info button.  
The Crystal Reports Registration dialog box appears.
2. Enter your name, address, phone, and fax in the edit boxes provided, and click OK when finished  
You are returned to the Crystal Reports Registration dialog box.
3. Click the Print Registration Form button.  
Crystal Reports prints out a copy of your completed registration form.
4. Fax the form to Crystal Services at the number that appears on the form, or mail it to Crystal Services at the address that appears on the form.
5. In a few days, the company will mail or fax you back your serial number.
6. Enter the serial number in the Enter serial number... edit box, and click the Proceed to Crystal Reports button when finished.  
This takes you to Crystal Reports and disables the dialog box so it no longer appears when you start the program.

---

## Quick Start

If you are an experienced Windows user who wants to get right into the program, follow these steps to set up a Crystal Reports report for the first time after you install the program.

1. Start Crystal Reports by double clicking on the Crystal Reports icon in the Program Manager.
2. Select New Report from the File menu.
3. When the Choose Database File dialog box appears, select the first database you want to activate for your report and press OK when finished.

The Crystal Reports Report Editor appears with Page Header, Details, and Page Footer sections set up on your report template. The sections are all blank initially. Create your report by inserting and formatting items in each of these sections.

4. The Insert Database Field dialog box appears on screen with the Report Editor.

The Insert Database Field dialog box displays a list of all of the fields in the active database. To speed the entry of multiple fields, the box remains on screen until click on the Done button. You can move the dialog box to a new location if you wish.

5. Select the first field you want to appear on the report.

A rectangular insertion cursor appears.

6. Position the cursor at the point in the Details section where you want your field to appear, and click the left mouse button to enter it.

Crystal Reports marks the field position with a rectangular box. The characters in the box indicate whether the field is text (XXX...), number (555,...), dollar value (\$555,...) date (YYYY-M...), or Boolean (T/F). The number of characters in the box indicate the number of characters allowed for the field in the database from which it came.

7. Repeat Steps 5 and 6 until you have placed all the fields you want to place.

8. To create a title, select Insert|Text Field, type in the information you want to appear, click Accept when finished, and position the field where you want it in the Page Header section.

You can also insert database fields or special fields in that section from the Insert menu.

9. To see how your results will print, select Print To Window from the Print menu. Close the window when you are finished with your review.

10. If you want to:

- ☐ change the placement or width of a field
- ☐ format the field
- ☐ insert a subtotal or grand total for a field
- ☐ delete a field

click the field box for that field. Black handles appear on the right and left sides of the field box to indicate that it has been selected.

- ☐ To change the placement of the field, drag the field box to its new position using the mouse or the arrow keys. The arrow keys move the field box one grid position each time you press them.

- ❑ To change the width of the field, drag the right or left handle using your mouse or use a Shift-Arrow combination on your keyboard.
- ❑ To format or subtotal the field, click the right mouse button while the cursor is inside the field. A pop-up menu appears listing your various options.
  - To change the font, select Change Font and refine your selection using the Font dialog box when it appears.
  - To change the format (alignment within field; number, currency, or date display; etc.) select Change Format and refine your selection using the Field Format dialog box when it appears.
  - To insert a subtotal, select Insert Subtotal and refine your selection using the Insert Subtotal dialog box when it appears. In this dialog box select the field and the condition that triggers a new subtotal whenever the field's value changes, and select the sort direction: Ascending (A to Z, 1 to 9) or Descending (Z to A, 9 to 1). The program creates a new section to hold the subtotal.

---

NOTE:

**The program automatically sorts the data (based on the field that triggers the subtotals) before it subtotals. Manually entering a subtotal sort is not necessary.**

---

- To insert a grand total, select Insert Grand Total. The program creates a new section to hold the grand total.
  - To delete the field, select Delete Field.
11. To create a formula to make data calculations or comparisons, select Formula Field from the Insert menu.
- Enter a name for your formula in the Insert Formula dialog box, and enter the formula itself in the Formula Editor when it appears. Enter fields, operators, and functions by selecting them from their respective scroll lists.
- You can get complete information on each available Function and Operator via the Help button, and you can check your formula syntax via the Check button. Entering a Crystal Reports formula is similar to entering a formula in a spreadsheet cell. When finished editing, select Accept and place the formula just like you do a database field.
12. To change the sort order, select Record Sort Order from the print menu.
- Select the field(s) you want Crystal Reports to use for sorting the report data.
13. To change the sort and group by field, select Group Section from the Edit menu.

Select the group section of interest from the list that appears in the Edit Group Section (sections) dialog box, and select the new “trigger” field from the Edit Group Section (edit) dialog box when it appears.

14. If you want to limit your report to specific records (for example, the records of California customers that have YTD sales greater than \$10,000), click the first field on which you want your selection to be based (in this case the State field) and choose Select Records from the Print menu or the right mouse button pop-up menu.

Answer the questions that appear in the Select Records dialog box and click OK when finished. If your selection is based on more than one field, repeat the process with the remaining field(s) until you have completed entering your selection specifications.

15. When finished, you can print your report by selecting Print To Printer from the Print menu.

---

## About Crystal Reports

Crystal Reports is a powerful yet easy to use program for creating custom reports, lists, and form letters using data from your existing databases. The program works by establishing connections with one or more of your databases. Using these connections as conduits, Crystal Reports draws in the values from database fields select and uses them in the report, either in their original form or as part of a formula that generates more sophisticated values.

Crystal Reports was designed to work with all kinds of data: numbers, currency, text, dates, and Boolean (Yes/No) fields. It has a wide range of built-in tools that you can use to manipulate that data to fit your needs. Using these tools, you can:

- ☐ make calculations and comparisons of data values,
- ☐ calculate subtotals, and grand totals of field values,
- ☐ calculate group averages, count the records in a group, and test for minimum and maximum values,
- ☐ test for the presence of specific values,
- ☐ present data only if certain conditions are met,
- ☐ evaluate logical relationships between values,
- ☐ convert data from one type to another,
- ☐ merge text with other text,

- ☐ merge text with data field data, and
- ☐ perform numerous other useful, data-related activities.

The data can be placed wherever you want it on the report, highlighted with special fonts and font sizes. With Crystal Reports, your reports can be as simple or as complex as your needs demand.

## How Crystal Reports Prepares Reports

Crystal Reports prepares reports by reading data in the database files you have selected and making that data available for use in your report.

- ☐ If you wish to use data in a single data file, you simply choose that file when Create the report.
- ☐ If you wish to use data in multiple data files, you need to select the files and also to indicate the field or fields in each file that Crystal Reports is to use to match data.

---

NOTE:

**Crystal Reports does not write data to your original data files. Your original files remain unchanged using Crystal Reports, no matter how much you might manipulate the data select.**

---

## Databases that Work with Crystal Reports

Crystal Reports can build reports using the standard data files generated by dBASE for Windows and Paradox for Windows as well as with DOS versions of dBASE and Paradox.

---

## The Crystal Reports Window

The Crystal Reports window is simple and easy to understand:

- ☐ the Title Bar appears at the top of the window,
- ☐ the Menu Bar appears just below the Title Bar, and

- ☐ the Button Bar appears just below the Menu Bar.

## Title Bar

The Title Bar displays the name of the program running in the window, Crystal Reports. You can use the title bar to activate the window (if the window is buried in a cascade of windows) or to move the window (by depressing the left mouse button with the pointer on the title bar and then, while the button is still depressed, dragging the window to a new location), or to maximize the window (by double clicking on the title bar).

## The Menu Bar

The Menu Bar is Crystal Reports' command center. Each option on the menu bar calls up a drop down menu of commands that you can use to create, modify, print, and save your reports.

Each menu is listed in the table below:

File	The File menu includes commands you can use to open, close, and save files, to save files under a different file name, print the file to a printer, and create new report files. It also includes a command you can use to exit Crystal Reports. Additionally it contains a command that allows you to configure Crystal Reports to your specifications.
Edit	The Edit menu allows you to modify aspects of your report. The menu includes commands you can use to edit formulas, to edit and delete group sections, and to change summary operations. It also contains commands for cutting, copying, and pasting text, clearing (deleting) report elements, toggling the display of field names on and off, and changing your report title.
Insert	The Insert menu is the central menu use for creating reports. The menu includes commands you can use to insert database fields, text fields, and formula fields; subtotals, grand totals, summaries (counts, averages, etc.), and group sections; print date, page number, record number and group number fields; and graphics, lines, and boxes.
Format	The Format menu includes commands for changing the look of the elements in your report. It includes commands for changing fonts, and formatting fields, report sections, graphics, lines, and boxes. The menu also provides commands for adding field borders as well as background color and drop shadows for your fields.

Database	The Database menu is used to select and delete databases for use with your reports, to change the alias use to identify the database, and to link and unlink databases. It also has a command, File Location, for directing Crystal Reports to look for database files in new locations. Two verify commands can be used to adapt your reports to minor changes in database structure.
Print	The Print menu includes commands that let you print your report to a print window, to a disk file, or to a printer, print the report definition (a report describing your report), select the records or groups to be included in your report, select the order in which report data is to be sorted (by record or by group), and select a printer if you want the report to print on something other than the default printer.
Window	The Window menu includes commands that let you rearrange icons and windows. It also lists the report windows that are open and includes a command that lets you close all report windows simultaneously, if desired.
Help	The Help menu includes a command that takes you to Crystal Reports' main help index, a command that will give you information about the Crystal Reports version you are using, and other help-related topics.

## The Button Bar

Crystal Reports groups several commonly-used commands on a Button Bar that remains on screen at all times (unless you choose to turn it off).

Each command is represented by an individual button, and each button displays a graphic that visually describes the command. You activate Button Bar commands by clicking the appropriate button one time with the left mouse button. The Button Bar eliminates some of the steps needed to activate the included commands, and it can thus greatly speed your work in creating reports.

## The Status Bar

The status bar at the bottom of the report window displays valuable information to help use Crystal Reports more efficiently:

Button bar functions	When the cursor is over a Button Bar button, the Status Bar displays a short description of the button's function.
Menu command descriptions	When you highlight a menu command, the Status Bar displays a short description of the command . To highlight a menu command, click the menu name and move to the command using the Down Arrow key.
Current selections	When select or place a graphic, field, text field, graphic line or box, special field, or formula, the status bar displays the name of the item selected. It displays: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- the file name for a graphic,</li> <li>- the alias and field name for a field,</li> <li>- the text in a text field,</li> <li>- the words Line for a line and Box for a box,</li> <li>- the field type for special fields (PrintDate, RecordNumber, etc.)</li> <li>- the formula name for a formula.</li> </ul>
Graphic Coordinates	When select or create a bit-mapped graphic, a graphic box, or a graphic line, the program displays the coordinates for the left, right, top, and bottom sides of the graphic element.

---

## Right Mouse-Button Capabilities

When you are working in the Report Editor, you can speed up your work considerably using Crystal Reports' right mouse button capabilities. When the cursor is positioned on a report element (a field, a group field, a formula, etc.) and click the right mouse button, Crystal Reports displays a pop-up menu right next to the element. Unlike Crystal Reports' standard menus that group commands by function (editing, inserting, etc.), these pop-up menus are element-specific: that is, they

contain only those commands from Crystal Reports' primary menus that are available for use with the selected element. The pop-up menus are valuable because:

- ❑ they display the name and source (alias) of the element at the top of the menu so you can identify the elements on your report with a single mouse click,
- ❑ they appear right next to the selected element making them quicker and easier to access than Crystal Reports' main menus,
- ❑ they contain only the commands you need; you do not need to search for commands on a more comprehensive menu,
- ❑ they make it easier to learn Crystal Reports because:
  - they eliminate the need to remember where to find a command, and
  - because you're dealing with only a compact list of commands, they make it easier to pick the right one, and
- ❑ they *spotlight* the things you can do with an element making it an easier system to use when you are under pressure or distracted.

## Using the Right Mouse Button Menus

Use the following procedure to use the right mouse button menus.

1. Position the cursor on the element of interest.
2. Click the right mouse button.

The pop-up menu appears.

3. Select the command of interest from the pop-up menu.

These options work exactly like the corresponding options that appear on Crystal Reports' primary menus. For information on using any of these menu options, see the corresponding option in *Crystal Reports Help*.

---

NOTE:

**If you have swapped left/right mouse buttons via the Control Panel, the left mouse button will activate the pop-up menus.**

---



---

## Crystal Reports Report Windows

When a Crystal Reports report appears, it appears in a report window.

A report window has a title bar, minimize and maximize buttons, and a control menu box like the Crystal Reports window.

Unlike the Crystal Reports window, the report window does not have its own menu. Instead, the commands from the Crystal Reports menu remain visible and are active for the document window.

Also unlike the Crystal Reports window, the document window has scroll bars at the bottom and along the right hand edge. Using these scroll bars, you can reveal parts of the document that aren't immediately showing in the window.

---

## Getting Help with Crystal Reports

Crystal Reports offers a comprehensive help system to support you during every step of the report development process.

### Context Sensitive Help

*Context sensitive help* gives you immediate help with a screen element of interest (menu command, dialog box, etc.). The program takes you directly to the help information you seek without the need to traverse the indexing system.

---

NOTE:

**To get help on a specific menu command, click the menu name and then use the Down Arrow key to highlight the command of interest. Once the command is highlighted, press F1.**

---

### Indexed Help

Indexed help takes you to the help indexing system, a hierarchy of indexes which is designed to help you target your topic of interest. Using the indexing system, you can select a broad topic of interest from the first index and then narrow your selection using the next index that appears, then the next. etc.

## ***Chapter 10 Using Crystal Reports***

---

This chapter provides a structured approach to preparing reports with Crystal Reports.

---

### **Using Crystal Reports**

The approach of this chapter in preparing reports with Crystal Reports includes the following elements:

- ☐ deciding on the content of your report,
- ☐ developing a prototype on paper,
- ☐ setting up the prototype using Crystal Reports,
- ☐ manipulating the data with formulas and functions,
- ☐ grouping, summarizing, and sorting your data,
- ☐ editing and formatting the data,
- ☐ specifying the records/groups to be included in the report, and
- ☐ printing the finished report.

This is *not* a hands-on chapter, but an important introduction that can make your report creation work more efficient and more satisfying. The chapter has been designed to provide you with a conceptual understanding of Crystal Reports as well as a brief introduction to Crystal Reports' powerful features.

---

### **Deciding on the Content of Your Report**

Before you do anything else, you should outline the information you want your report to provide. Use the following list of questions as a guide in making that outline:

- ☐ What is the overall purpose of the report?

- ☐ Who is going to read the report?
- ☐ What is the report title going to be?
- ☐ What information do you need besides the title to identify the report?
  - Where is that information to come from?
  - If the information exists in a database, what types of fields is the data stored in: number, text, etc.?
- ☐ What identifying information do you want to appear at the bottom of each page?
  - Where is that information to come from?
  - If the information exists in a database, what types of fields is the data stored in: number, text, etc.?
- ☐ What specific data do you want to appear in the body of the report?
  - Where is that data to come from?
  - Does that data exist in data fields or does it need to be calculated from data field values?
  - What kind of fields is the data stored in: number, text, etc.?
  - Do you want to show totals?
  - What kind?
  - What do you want to total?
- ☐ What information, if any, do you want flagged on the report?
  - How do you want it flagged?
- ☐ What information do you want highlighted in some way so that it really stands out?
- ☐ Do you want the report to be based on all records in the database or only on specified records?

## Purpose

What is the overall purpose of the report?

Reports are management tools. Their purpose is to help individuals quickly grasp the essential elements and relationships found in raw data so they can make effective decisions. For a report to be effective, it has to present the right data in a logical way. If it presents the wrong data or if it presents the right data in a haphazard

manner, the report may slow the decision making process or even encourage incorrect decisions.

A good starting place in the development of a report is to write out the purpose of the report in a sentence or two. The purpose statement helps you focus on your primary needs, and it gives your report both a starting point and a goal. Here are some examples of purpose statements:

- ❑ The purpose of this report is to show monthly and year -to-date sales by sales rep, compare this year's numbers to last year, and flag reps who are seriously deficient.
- ❑ The purpose of this report is to show sales activity for each item in inventory, and to suggest reorder quantities based on that activity.
- ❑ The purpose of this report is to calculate bowling averages and handicaps for each member of the bowling league.

Clarifying the purpose of the report before you start is a critical step in the overall process. A report without a clear purpose is like a meeting without a clear agenda; it rambles and accomplishes little.

## Readers

Who is going to read the report?

A single report is often used by many individuals. A detailed, company-wide sales report, for example, may be used by sales reps, the regional sales manager, the national sales manager, and the Chief Operating Officer (COO).

Each of these individuals will be interested in different aspects of the report.

- ❑ A sales rep will use the report to evaluate his/her individual sales performance and to compare that performance to that of other reps in the region.
- ❑ The regional sales manager will use the report to evaluate the reps in his/her region and to compare the region's performance to that of other regions.
- ❑ The national sales manager will use the report to evaluate the performance of his/her regional managers and to compare overall sales to the current sales forecasts.

- ❑ The COO will use the report to evaluate the performance of the Vice President of Marketing and the sales department as a whole, and to project such things as manufacturing needs, warehouse locations, etc.

Since each of the users of the report has different interests, it is important to plan the report so it includes the information each of the users is looking for.

## Title

What is the report title going to be?

Write out a working title for your report. You may decide to change it later, but at least you will have a title to use when creating your prototype report.

## Other Header Information

What information do you need besides the title to identify the report?

Are you going to include identifying information in addition to your report title? You may wish to include the current date, information on who prepared the report, a block of text to describe the purpose of the report, the range of data covered, etc. If you are going to include such information, write it down so you can use it in preparing your prototype.

## Header Information Sources

Where is that information to come from?

The information can come from a variety of sources, depending on the kind of information you plan to use. For example, the current date can be inserted using the Crystal Reports Insert|Print Date Field command. Information on who prepared the report might be drawn from individual data fields in the database(s) used. (If it is to be drawn from a database, what database? Or, what combination of databases?) A block of text can be created and entered on the face of the report itself. As you begin to think of where the information is to come from, you begin formally structuring the report.

## Data Types in the Header

If the information exists in a database, what types of fields contain the data: number, text, etc.?

Crystal Reports uses different rules for working with different types of data. You will find it helpful later if you note the data type of each piece of data you plan to draw from a database.

## Footer Information

What identifying information do you want to appear at the bottom of each page (page number, report name, author's name, "Confidential," etc.)?

## Footer Data Sources

Where is that information to come from?

## Data Types in the Footer

If the information exists in a database, what types of fields is the data stored in: number, text, etc.?

## Report Body Data

What specific data do you want to appear in the body of the report?

When you think of a report, it is probably the body of the report that you think of. The body should contain all the data that you need to fulfill the statement of purpose you wrote for the report. It should also contain all of the data needed by the various users that you have identified. You might find it helpful to list first the basic data that is required to fulfill the purpose statement, and then list the more specific kinds of data needed by the various users.

## Body Data Sources

Where is that data to come from?

This step requires you to look at the available databases. Crystal Reports allows you to combine data from different databases to create your reports, so you have a great deal of flexibility in your work.

- ☐ Much of the data in a typical report will be taken directly from data fields. Which data fields will you be using and where are they located?
- ☐ Other data will be calculated based on data fields. Which data fields will be used in the calculations?
- ☐ Still other data will be input directly into the report (headings, text blocks, etc.). Which data will enter directly on the report, without drawing it from data fields?

## Existing or Calculated?

Does that data exist in data fields or does it need to be calculated from data field values?

Some report information can be drawn directly from data fields (sales information, for example); other information will have to be calculated based on data field values (sales commission, for example, based on the relationship of sales to quota). In your planning, it can be helpful to segregate or flag data that needs to be calculated from that which can be used directly.

## Data Types in the Body

What kinds of fields contain the data: number, text, etc.?

While it is important to understand data types for all data you will be using, it is of critical importance that you know the data type for data fields that will be used in calculations. Functions and operators work with specific kinds of data, so it's important to know the data type to know which functions and operators you can use in your calculations.

## Groups

Do you want your data organized into groups? How do you want it grouped? By customer? By date?

## Group Values

Do you want to show a subtotal at the end of each group? A count? An average? Crystal Reports allows you to specify several kinds of group values.

## Group Value Positions

Where do you want the group values to appear. With the group data? With the group data but on a page separate from other groups? Only at the bottom of the page?

Crystal Reports gives you all of these options.

## Grand Totals, Grand Total Averages, etc.

Do you want to total (or average, count, or determine the maximum or minimum value included in) all the values in any column on your report?

Crystal Reports allows you to do this and place the grand total (or the grand total average, grand total count, etc.) at the bottom of the selected column.

## Flags

What information, if any, do you want flagged on the report?

You may want to call attention to some data by flagging it on your report. For example, non-moving inventory items are often flagged on inventory reports so they can be given special attention. If you want any information flagged, identify the information and the parameters for flagging. Using the inventory report example, you might want to flag each item that has shown no activity during the last month, during the last three months, or during some defined period.

## Flag Options

How do you want it flagged?

You may want to flag items with an asterisk or some other symbol, or you may want a word to appear as a flag. In any case, you should write out flagging instructions so they are handy.

## Highlights

What information do you want highlighted in some way so that it really stands out?

Crystal Reports gives you the opportunity to underline report elements, or to change the fonts or font size used for specific report items. All of these formatting tools can be used to highlight key data on a report. If you have data that you want highlighted, you should write down highlighting instructions so they are handy too.

## Record or Group Selection

Do you want the report to be based on all records or groups in the database or only on specified records or groups?

Crystal Reports gives you the opportunity to base a report on all records in a given database, or on a limited set of records from the database. Using Crystal Reports you can select records based on simple date ranges or comparisons, or you can create complex formulas to identify the records to be included. Take a few minutes to determine the records needed for your report and list the criteria to be used for selecting those records.

## Sorting

Do you want your data sorted based on record or group values?

Crystal Reports gives you both alternatives.

---

## Developing a Prototype on Paper

Graphic designers generally begin their work on a magazine cover, brochure, or display advertisement with a rough pencil sketch. They often use boxes, circles, or other symbols to represent the graphic elements they intend to include in the final product, and they often use lines or scribbles to represent text. Doing the rough design on paper, in pencil, helps them create a “look” for each page. It helps them find a balanced way of positioning the various elements before they begin working with sophisticated graphics tools. We think you will find a similar exercise helpful in designing your Crystal Reports reports.

While a paper prototype is useful regardless of your expertise with Crystal Reports, it is particularly valuable when you are first learning to use the Crystal Reports program. With the paper prototype at hand, you can put your full effort into learning and using the Crystal Reports commands instead of trying to design and learn at the same time.

Use the following procedure to design a paper prototype with Crystal Reports.

- ☐ Get paper of the size you'll be using for your finished report.
- ☐ Position your title and other descriptive header information, using boxes or lines to represent report elements.
- ☐ Position your footer information.
- ☐ Review the page for balance.
- ☐ Look at the information you intend to include in the body of your report.
  - Count the number of fields you will be using and estimate the appropriate spacing between fields.
  - Use rectangles to pencil in the fields using your estimated spacing.
  - Change the spacing if necessary.
  - Decide on a logical sequence for presenting the report data.
  - Label the fields to indicate that sequence.
- ☐ Use small boxes to indicate group values and totals.
- ☐ Place some random flags where you want the flags to appear.
- ☐ Darken any elements you want highlighted so they stand out from the rest of your prototype.
- ☐ Review your finished product for look and balance, and make changes as needed.

---

## Setting Up the Prototype Using Crystal Reports

Once you have completed your paper prototype, it is a straightforward process to recreate that prototype in the computer, using Crystal Reports. Before you do, it is important to understand how Crystal Reports' report editing process works.

---

NOTE:

**This section assumes that you are new to Crystal Reports and that you plan to build a simple report using data from a single database. No advanced topics are covered in this section.**

---

When you want to begin a new report, Crystal Reports displays the Choose Database File dialog box. Use this dialog box to select the database file(s) that contain the data you want to use in your report. You will first select the directory and, once in the directory, you can select the database file you identified earlier in *Deciding on the Content of Your Report*.

---

## The Report Editor

Once select your database, Crystal Reports displays the Report Editor screen. Use this screen to insert and format data and to watch your report take shape.

When you open a new report, Crystal Reports automatically creates three sections in the Report Editor:

- ☐ A Page header section – this section is generally used for the report title, field headings, and other information that you want to appear at the top of each page.
- ☐ A Details section – this section is the body of the report. The bulk of your report data will generally appear in this section.
- ☐ A Page footer section – this section usually contains the page number and any other information that you want to appear on the bottom of each page.

The name of each section appears in the gray area to the left of the Report Editor edit box.

- ☐ Build your report by inserting data fields, formulas, and other report elements (record counts, record numbers, etc.) in the Details section of the editor. Use the Insert menu, in most cases, to select or create the elements you want to insert on the

report. The Report Editor uses rectangular element markers to indicate the size, position, and data type of the report elements you have inserted.

❑ You add subtotals (and other group values) by selecting a field to subtotal and then telling Crystal Reports the conditions that are to generate a new subtotal or group value (change of customer number, change of sales rep, etc.). Crystal Reports creates group value sections as needed and places the group value in the section. Again, Crystal Reports uses rectangular field boxes to represent the group values.

❑ Insert grand totals in the Grand Total section. This section appears when select the field to total and then select Insert|Grand Total. Crystal Reports uses a rectangular field box, this time to identify the field in the Grand Total section of the Report Editor.

❑ You can add freeform text anywhere on the report by positioning the text cursor in the section in which you want the text to appear, typing in the text, and then using the Tab key to move it into position. You can also type freeform text in a text field; this allows you to avail yourself of additional formatting options (alignment, hide options, etc.).

## Auto-Scrolling Capabilities

The Report Editor has auto-scrolling capabilities. That is, whenever the cursor hits one of the edges of the Report Editor when you are placing, resizing, or moving a field or drawing a graphic line or box, the Editor automatically scrolls to reveal more workspace (if more is available).

## Resizing Sections

The Report Editor first appears with default section sizes. You can expand or reduce report sections by dragging the lines that separate the sections. When you position the I-beam cursor over one of those lines, the cursor changes to a double-arrow resizing cursor. Once that cursor appears, you can resize as needed. Alternately, to expand a report section, you can click the section of interest and press Enter as many times as needed. Once you've expanded a section, you can reduce it by deleting unneeded lines with the Backspace key.

## A Word about Databases, Records and Fields

Before we go any further, a discussion of databases, records, and fields is in order. A *record* is the basic building block of a database. Each record contains data about a single entity (a customer, an order, etc.), and each *database* contains at least one

record. The data in each record is stored in *fields* (holding spaces). Each field holds one piece of data known as a *value*. The database from which you will create a report is a collection of related records. A customer database, for example, is a collection of records that each contain data on a single customer.

## Records and Fields in Row/Column Reports

Think of the data in a database as being stored in horizontal rows and vertical columns.

CustNumber	Fname	Lname
01034456	Bill	Brown
01034457	Jane	Doe
01034458	Bob	Jackson
01034459	Mary	Jones

The table shows field values for four records from such a database (in this case a customer database).

- ☐ Each row represents one record. All of the data in that row is about a single customer, but the data is broken into three distinct pieces: customer number, first name, and last name. Each of those pieces represents a value found in a field on that record, the CustNumber, Fname, and Lname fields respectively (as indicated by the column headings).
- ☐ Each column represents one field. All the data in a given column represents the values that appear in that field on each of the records in the database.

The structure of a row/column report corresponds to the structure of a database with rows representing individual records and columns representing individual fields.

## Records and Fields in Data Block Reports

Some reports do not follow the row/column format, however. Instead, some group related data in data blocks. A mailing list, for example, typically uses several rows for each record: a row for the company name, a second row for the street address, a third row for the city, state and ZIP code, etc. In such a report all the data for a given customer in the list appears in a block. Each block represents a single record even though the data in the block spans several rows.

## Data Types

The data type of a field, (string, number, currency, date, Boolean, or memo) determines the type of information that can be stored in that field and which will print in the report column.

Fields of each data type display on your screen like this:

XXXXXXX	String — for example, a company name, account description or customer name.
\$5,555,555.55	Currency (Paradox/Btrieve files only) — for example \$500.00 or \$50,000,000.00-.
5,555,555.55	Number — for example 120 or 5555.
YYYY-MM-DD	Date — for example Oct 10 90.
YES/NO	Boolean (YES/NO) data fields — for example, the result of a formula which compares a customer's credit limit to see if it is greater than \$5000 and prints YES if the credit limit is more than that amount; NO if it is less than that amount.
XXXXXXX	Memo — a paragraph describing a piece of property, comments regarding a job applicant, a summary of a movie plot, etc.

## Formatting, and Record and Group Selection

While formatting, and record and group selection will be covered in depth later, there are a few things about those subjects that are worthwhile to cover here:

- ☐ Currency, date, and Boolean fields are shown above in the default format. This format is used for both the element markers (in the report editor) and for the report elements themselves (in the report). If you want your data to appear in a different format on your report, you can make the desired changes using the Format|Field command.

---

NOTE:

**The characters in the element markers change to reflect font changes and many formatting changes (alignment, etc.).**

---

- ☐ The width and position of a field (when place it in the Report Editor) determines the initial spacing between fields and the order in which the fields will print across the report page.

- ☐ When insert a data field in your report, Crystal Reports assumes that you want to pull data from all the data records in the selected database. To limit the records (or groups of records) used in your report, you need to tell Crystal Reports how to identify the records or groups of records you want to include. Using Edit Record Selection Formula or Edit Group Selection Formula on the Print menu, you can build the selection formula that fits your needs.

---

## Building Your Prototype

To build your report you will follow these steps:

- ☐ Select the database(s) you wish to use in your prototype report.
- ☐ Enter and position the data fields, text, and titles you want included in the header, footer, and body of your report.
- ☐ Print your report to the Print Window and review your work.
- ☐ Make whatever changes are necessary.
- ☐ Insert your totals, subtotals and other group fields.
- ☐ Enter and position any formula fields that will calculate or manipulate data or create flags.
- ☐ Print your report to the Print Window and review your work.
- ☐ Format the report elements that you want to stand out in some way from the others.

## Selecting the Database(s)

Use the File|New Report command to begin a report from scratch. That command leads you to a dialog box from which you can select the first database you wish to use. To select additional databases, use the Database|Add File to Report command.

## Entering and Positioning Data Fields

Enter and position data fields using the Insert Database Field dialog box that lists available fields in the selected database. Make your selections from the list, and then

place the field in your report using the rectangular field placement cursor that appears.

## Adding Text

You can add text to your report by typing it at the text cursor and then moving it into place. Move the I-beam cursor to the line on which you wish to enter text and click the left mouse button to set the text cursor at the left edge of the Report Editor. Then, simply type in your text, move the I-beam cursor in front of it, and push it into position using the Tab key or Space Bar. You can also add text by inserting text fields and positioning them as you would any other field.

## Entering Field Titles

By default, Crystal Reports automatically inserts a field title whenever insert a new field or formula field. The title is a text field that can be edited. The left edge of the title field aligns with the left edge of the field it identifies. To toggle this feature off use the File|Options command.

## Printing and Reviewing

You can print and review your work in progress at any time using the Print|Print To Window command. When select this command, Crystal Reports prints your report to the print preview window.

## Making Changes

Move a database field by dragging it to a new position with the mouse, or by selecting it and using the Arrow keys. You can move a field within its originating section or to other sections of your report if you wish. Delete a field by selecting it and then pressing the Delete key or selecting Edit|Clear.

---

NOTE:

**To select multiple fields at one time, press the Shift key and, while keeping it depressed, click the various fields you want to select. Handles will appear on each field selected. When finished, you can move or delete the selected fields as a group.**

---

---

## Placing Totals, Subtotals, and Other Group Values

Place grand totals by selecting the numeric or dollar field you want to total, and then selecting Insert|Grand Total from the Menu Bar.

Select group values (subtotals, group averages, group counts, etc.) by first selecting the field you want grouped. Then select the kind of group value you want, using the Insert|Subtotal or Insert|Summary commands. Select the kind of group value you want (if selected Insert|Summary). Then select the field that the program uses to sort and group your data by and the sort direction.

## Moving Group Values

Move a subtotal or summary by dragging it to a new position with the mouse, or by selecting it and moving it with the Arrow keys. You can move subtotals and summaries only within their originating sections, or from the group footer section to the group header section for the subtotal or summary of interest.

## Entering Formulas

Enter formulas using the Insert|Formula command. This command calls up the Formula Editor. Using the Formula Editor, build your formula using fields, functions, and operators, and check your work using the built in formula checker.

## Formatting

You can change the font or point size using the Format|Font command. You can change the alignment and printing characteristics of field data using the Format|Field command, and you can change the conditions that trigger subtotals, add page breaks, suppress blank lines, hide selected sections, etc. using the Format|Section command.

Once you have built a prototype report, you have a working model that you can customize to meet your specific needs.

---

## Manipulating the Data with Formulas and Functions

Crystal Reports uses formulas and functions to help Create reports more quickly and easily. It uses them also to allow you to do the kind of “number crunching” and data manipulations that are necessary for advanced reporting.

### Formulas

A formula is a set of instructions that may be used to calculate information you cannot obtain directly from database data fields. For example:

- ❑ A database record may have a *Qty1* field and a *Qty2* field but no field that sums both quantities. If you want the sum of these two fields to appear on your report, you need a formula that adds the value in one field to the value in the other.
- ❑ A database record for a sales rep may contain the field *GrossSales* and you want to use 120% of that gross as the sales quota for the following year. To accomplish this you need a formula that multiplies *GrossSales* by 120%.
- ❑ A database record for a one product company may contain a field *Revenue* that expresses total dollar sales for the year. You're interested in determining the number of units sold based on an average price of 49.95 per unit. To accomplish this you need a formula that divides *Revenue* by 49.95.

All of these examples require simple formulas:  $\{file.Qty1\} + \{file.Qty2\}$ ,  $1.20 * \{file.GrossSales\}$ , and  $\{file.Revenue\}/49.95$  respectively. These formulas all use Crystal Reports operators (+, \* [multiply], / [divide]) and they're all easy to create and understand.

But not all of your information needs can be reduced to simple formulas; some needs require extensive calculations or manipulations. For example:

- ❑ You want to determine your average monthly unit sales for the last year, rounded to the nearest unit.
- ❑ You want to convert ounces of inventory to pounds and ounces, and have it appear in the format *x pounds y ounces*.

The formulas required to accomplish these activities require a fair amount of data manipulation: rounding, averaging, converting numbers to text, calculating remainders, etc. While some of the manipulations (averaging, calculating remainders) can be done using Crystal Reports operators alone, others cannot be done without the use of functions. And even the ones that can be done without functions can be done more quickly and efficiently with them. (For additional information on formulas, see Crystal Reports Help.

## Functions

A function is a preset procedure or subroutine used to evaluate, make calculations on, or transform data. For example:

- ☐ the NumericText function evaluates the contents of a text field to see if it is a number, and
- ☐ the UpperCase function transforms all lowercase characters in a string to uppercase.

When you specify a function, Crystal Reports performs the set of operations built into the function without requiring you to specify each operation separately. For example:

- ☐ the Average function sums a list of values and divides the sum by the number of values in the list.
- ☐ the DayOfWeek function extracts the day component of a date, determines the day of the week the date falls on, and converts the day of the week to a number (1-7) where Sunday is the first day of the week.

By performing multiple operations with a single command, these kinds of functions are a kind of shorthand that make it easier and less time consuming for you to create reports. But not all functions involve lengthy calculations; some simply allow you to do things that you couldn't do easily without them while others take the drudgery out of report creation. For example:

- ☐ the ToNumber function converts a number that has been stored as text, to a number that can be used in calculations, and
- ☐ TrimRight removes all the spaces to the right of a string of data stored left-justified in a database.

## How Functions are Used

Functions are used in formulas. In fact, a single function and its required argument(s) may include the entire formula. For example, `Abs ({file.TestResult})` is a perfectly acceptable, stand-alone formula for calculating the absolute value of the field *TestResult*.

## Function Syntax

Each function comes with its own set of usage rules (syntax). These rules must be followed for the function to perform correctly. If they are not, Crystal Reports displays a Formula Compiler Error message.

As an example, the correct syntax for using the `Average([array])` function is:

`Average ([array])`

« where *array* is an array of constants, field values or calculation results, separated by commas. »

Translated, this means that to use the `Average([array])` function correctly, you should enter:

`Average`

followed by a list of numeric values, separated by commas, with the list of values enclosed in brackets, and with the array enclosed in parentheses. Thus:

`Average ([1,2,3,4,5])`

is an example of the correct way to use the `Average([array])` function.

If you try to use the function:

- ☐ without separating the values by commas,
- ☐ without enclosing the values in brackets,
- ☐ without enclosing the array in parentheses,
- ☐ while including any unnecessary characters, or
- ☐ with values that are not numeric,

Crystal Reports won't accept the formula and will display a Compiler Error message identifying your error.

## Entering Formulas and Functions

Formulas and functions are entered via Crystal Reports' Formula Editor.

The Formula Editor is a dialog box that contains all the tools you need to create and check the correctness of formulas. Using the Editor, you:

- ☐ assign a name to your formula,
- ☐ enter the formula,
- ☐ check it to make sure you have entered it correctly, and then
- ☐ accept it for use in your report.

When you accept it, Crystal Reports places the formula in your report in the position selected for it. Then, when you print the report, Crystal Reports prints the results of the formula instead of the formula itself.

## The Fields Box

You can enter fields into your formulas in two ways: via the Fields box, or manually.

- ☐ To enter a field via the Fields scroll box, move the I-beam cursor to the place you want to insert the field and click the left mouse button to set the text cursor at that point. Then you locate the field you wish to insert from the Fields scroll box list.
  - Fields already in use in the report are grouped at the top of the list; other available fields follow.
  - Formulas you have entered are listed next, their names preceded by the @ sign.
  - All other fields available in the active databases are listed last, grouped by database.

Select a field. Crystal Reports inserts the selected field (complete with the required syntax elements) at the text cursor.

---

NOTE:

**Select an item from the Formula Editor scroll boxes (Fields, Functions, or Operators) by double clicking it, or by clicking it once to highlight it and then clicking the Select button at the bottom of the Editor to complete the selection process.**

---

- ☐ To enter a field manually, you locate the text cursor in the appropriate position and type in the field name as you would any text.

- ❑ The correct syntax for a database field name is:  
     { file.fieldname }  
     If you:
  - do not include the file name,
  - leave out the separating period, or
  - fail to surround the expression in braces,
 Crystal Reports will generate a Formula Compiler Error message detailing your error.
- ❑ The correct syntax for a formula field is:  
     { @formulaname }

## Operators and Functions Boxes

You can also enter operators and functions into your formula in one of two ways: manually or via the Operators and Functions scroll boxes.

- ❑ To enter an operator or function manually, you locate the text cursor in the appropriate position and type in the operator or function as you would any text.
- ❑ To enter an operator or function via the lists in the Functions and Operators scroll boxes, set the text cursor where you want the entry to appear in the formula.
  - Then select the item of interest from the scroll box lists. Crystal Reports inserts the selected item in your formula, complete with any parentheses, brackets, or commas required.

---

NOTE:

**For an array of items, only the first comma is included. As enter additional items into an array, you will need to type in commas to separate the items.**

---

## Order of Precedence

When entering formulas that contain different kinds of operators, it is important to consider order of precedence, the order in which Crystal Reports performs the operations in your formula.

You learned simple order of precedence in high school math: when performing calculations, do multiplication and division first, then addition and subtraction. Thus:

$$5 + 10 \times 3 = 35$$

The calculation  $10 \times 3$  is performed first to get 30. 30 is then added to 5 to arrive at the final answer.

Now if your intention is to add 5 to 10 and then multiply the sum by 3, you have to modify the order of precedence with parentheses. You can do that thus:

$$(5 + 10) \times 3 = 45$$

It's clear that parentheses have a higher precedence than the add, subtract, multiply, and divide operators. They redirect the order of calculation.

You learned all of this in school and Crystal Reports follows the same rules of precedence. But Crystal Reports uses many additional operators, and it's important for you to understand the precedence Crystal Reports assigns to each so you can write your formulas to perform as expected.

- ☐ In the following list, Crystal Reports performs the top level operations first, then the second level, then the third, and so forth.
- ☐ When it encounters two or more operations that are on the same level, it performs them left to right.

Level 1	Parentheses, Array, IfThenElse
Level 2	Call, Subscript
Level 3	Identity, Negate, Dollar, Not
Level 4	Multiply, Divide, Percent
Level 5	Add, Subtract
Level 6	To
Level 7	Less than, Greater than, Greater than or equal, Less than or equal, In
Level 8	Equal, Not equal
Level 9	And
Level 10	Or

## Using Dates in Formulas

Crystal Reports includes many useful functions for including dates and date ranges in formulas; you will learn more about those functions in Crystal Reports Help. At this point, however, it's useful to know how to enter any date into a formula.

Enter a date simply by entering the *Date* function (manually or via the Function button) and then providing the date of interest in the parentheses that follow in the form YYYY,MM,DD (1992,01,01 = January 1, 1992).

## The Formula Checker

The Formula Editor also contains a formula checker which checks the syntax of your formula. If the syntax is incorrect, the formula checker points out the location of the problem and tells you what the problem is. You activate the formula checker by selecting the Check button. Crystal Reports also checks the formula automatically when you choose Accept. When debugging formulas, especially if you have entered them manually, look carefully for:

- ☐ missing quotation marks around text strings,
- ☐ missing database name accompanying field names,
- ☐ missing braces around database name/field name combinations,
- ☐ missing closing parentheses to match opening parentheses,
- ☐ case differences (the Formula Checker is case sensitive),
- ☐ if-then-else formulas that use different data types for the *then* and *else* actions, and
- ☐ using X instead of \* for multiplication.

The Formula Editor is easy to use and can be called up by selecting Formula from the Insert menu.

## Developing Complex Calculations with Formulas

Crystal Reports allows you to combine fields, functions, and operators to create complex calculations and manipulations of data. For example, to test the drawing power of two different offers, you can use a single Crystal Reports formula to send one offer to all customers with an even customer number and a second offer to all customers with an odd customer number. You can do some remarkable manipulations using Crystal Reports formulas.

---

## Grouping, Summarizing, and Sorting Your Data

Crystal Reports allows you to group, summarize, and sort your data to achieve the reporting results you want.

### Grouping the Data

A group is a set of records that are related to each other in some way. In a customer list, for example, a group could consist of all those customers living in the same ZIP code, or in the same state. In a sales report, a group could consist of all the orders placed by the same customer, or all of the orders generated by a specific sales rep.

Breaking data into groups (and then doing something to evaluate the group data, if you wish) is a key part of effective reporting. In fact, it's what separates a report from being merely a presentation of raw data and a valuable communication tool.

Crystal Reports allows you great flexibility in grouping data. It also allows you to create a number of different kinds of group values.

### Group Values

A group value is the value generated as the result of an evaluation, a tally, or a calculation performed on data from a single group. A subtotal is one kind of group value; it is the sum of all of the values from a single field, from all the records in a group. In a sales report, for example, if you subtotal sales by sales rep, Crystal Reports gathers all the records that belong to the sales rep and totals the sales amounts from all the records. In a group average, Crystal Reports averages the values in a group of records; in a group count, it counts the values in a group of records, etc. Group values are important tools for creating powerful reports. Crystal Reports gives you several alternatives for working with group data. It enables you to:

- ☐ calculate the sum of values,
- ☐ calculate the standard deviation or variance of the values,
- ☐ average the values,
- ☐ count the values,
- ☐ determine the highest value, and
- ☐ determine the lowest value in the group.

## Grouping Data with Crystal Reports

While there may be many data fields on a report, there is typically only one field for which you are interested in grouping the data. In a sales report, for example, it would probably be the field listing the amount of sales; in a commission report, it would probably be the field listing the amount of commission, etc. To group data you first select the field you want to group together.

Once the field is selected, select the action you want to take on each group of data from that field:

- ☐ If you want to simply group the data and take no further action, you can select Insert|Group.
- ☐ If you want to subtotal it, you can select Insert|Subtotal.
- ☐ If you want to average, count, determine the maximum or minimum value, etc., you can select Insert|Summary.

Subtotals and summaries make up the category of group fields.

---

NOTE:

**The Insert|Subtotal command is simply a shortcut for setting up a summary that adds the values in each group.**

---

Once you have selected the group field and the action, select another field (a sort and group by field) that triggers a grouping whenever its value changes. In grouping your data by state, for example, you would use the state field to create a new group (and generate a group value if selected) whenever the state changes. Likewise, the ZIP code field would trigger a grouping whenever the ZIP code changes.

Once you've made these simple selections, Crystal Reports does the rest. Your data will be grouped, and the group value (if you have selected one) will be calculated and will accompany each group.

---

## Summarizing the Data

Crystal Reports provides three easy-to-use summarizing options:

**Grand Total**     A grand total adds all values in a field for the entire report and prints the sum on the last page.

Subtotal	A subtotal is a partial total, a total of a specific, limited group of data in a field.
Summary	A summary summarizes field data from a specific, limited group of records. It can total the data like a subtotal, but it can also average the values, count the values, or determine the highest or lowest value in each group or field.

All of these options are available on the Insert menu.

## The Summarizing Process

The process of summarizing the data on your report follows these steps:

1. Selecting the field you want to summarize.
2. Selecting the summarizing option you want from the Insert menu.

Finally, if select Subtotal or Summary as a total type, the process will also include the following step:

3. Selecting the data field that triggers a new subtotal/summary whenever its value changes.

## Selecting a Field to Total

To select the field you want to summarize, click on it with a mouse. Crystal reports puts handles on the selected marker to highlight it as selected.

## Selecting a Total Type

To select a total type, select it from the Insert menu or pop-up menu.

## Selecting a Field to Trigger a New Subtotal

If select Subtotal or Summary as a total type, Crystal Reports asks you to indicate the field that is to trigger a new subtotal/summary whenever its value changes.

---



---

---

## Sorting

There is a logic to the way values are arranged when they appear in a column on your report. Initially, they are arranged in the same order as the data appears in your database. But data can be sorted in a variety of ways:

- ☐ A mailing list, for example, could be sorted in ascending order, on the ZIP code field; that is, the customers would be sorted so that those with the lowest ZIP codes would appear first and those with the highest ZIP codes would appear last.
- ☐ It could also be sorted in ascending alphabetical order, on the last name field; that is, customers with last names beginning with A would appear first and those with last names beginning with Z would appear last.
- ☐ It could also be sorted by street address or customer first name if you had some practical reason for doing so.

Crystal Reports gives you the opportunity to change the existing sort order using the Print|Record Sort Order and Print|Group Sort Order commands.

### Sorting by Record

When use the Print|Record Sort Order command, Crystal Reports asks you to select two things:

- ☐ the field you want your sort to be based on (sort field), and
- ☐ the sort direction.

### Sort Field

A sort field is a field that determines the order in which data appears on your report. Crystal Reports sorts field data using Windows' sort comparison algorithms, and it uses rules specific to the Country select in the International section of the Windows Control Panel.

You can use any field as a sort field. A field's data type determines the method in which the data from that field is sorted:

Text	<p>Text fields are sorted in the following manner:</p> <p>One character values are sorted so that blanks have the lowest value, then punctuation, then numbers, then uppercase letters, and finally lowercase letters.</p> <p>Then two character values are sorted, then three, etc. using the same rules. As a result:</p> <p>“BOB” comes before “bob”,</p> <p>“123” comes before “124”,</p> <p>“ ” (blank) comes before “a”, and</p> <p>“aa” comes before “aaa”</p>
Dollars	Dollar fields are sorted in numeric order.
Number	Number values (120, or 5555) are sorted in numeric order.
Dates	Date fields are sorted in chronological order.
Booleans	Comparison fields are sorted so that false values come first, then true.

When select a sort field, Crystal Reports sorts the values from that field.

## Sort Direction

Direction refers to the order in which the values are printed, once sorted.

- ☐ Ascending order means smallest to largest, 1 to 9, A to Z, False to True.
- ☐ Descending order means largest to smallest, 9 to 1, Z to A, True to False.

## Single Field Sorts

Single field sorts are sorts in which all the data in the report is sorted based on the values in a single field. Sorting an inventory report by stock number and sorting a customer list by customer number are examples of single field sorts.

## Multiple Field Sorts

In multiple field sorts, Crystal Reports first sorts the entries (alphabetic or numeric) in the first field selected, putting them in ascending or descending order as specified.

Then it sorts any entries in the second field that can be sorted *without disturbing the sort order of entries in the first field*. It then sorts any entries in the third field that can be sorted *without disturbing the sort order of the entries in the first two fields*. It follows the same pattern for sorting additional fields.

## Sorting Groups

Crystal Reports allows you to change the order in which groups appear on your report. You can:

- ☐ base the sort on any group (subtotal or summary) in your report, and
- ☐ sort your report so that group field values appear in ascending or descending order.

You change the sort order using the Print|Group Sort Order command. When you sort by group, nothing happens to the sort order of the records within a group; only the relative positions of the groups themselves change.

---

---

## Editing and Formatting the Data

Crystal Reports makes it easy to edit and format your data. The editing/formatting process follows these steps:

1. Selecting the data you want to edit or format.
2. Selecting the editing or formatting action you want to take place.
3. Entering the specifics of the action in the dialog box/editor if/when it appears.

## Selecting the Data

To select the data element you want to edit or format, click on it with your mouse. Crystal Reports draws handles on the element marker to highlight it as selected.

## Selecting the Action

Once the element is selected, select the editing or formatting action from Crystal Reports' Edit or Format menus. For example:

- ☐ to change the font used to print the data, select Font from the Format menu,
- ☐ to hide the field when printing, select Field from the Format menu, or
- ☐ to modify a formula, select Formula from the Edit menu.

## Entering the Specifics

In those cases where a dialog box or editor appears after you've selected an action, enter the specifics of that action in the window that appears. For example:

- ☐ in the Font dialog box, enter the font and point size you wish to use, and indicate whether you want the data to appear in boldface or italics, or whether you want it to be underlined or overprinted with the strikeout character, and
- ☐ in the Formula Editor, Make the changes you want to the formula that appears, check those changes if you wish, and accept the revised formula when you're finished.

Crystal Reports takes it from there and performs the action selected.

---

### NOTE:

**In some cases you have to specify a second action to complete the editing change desired. For example, to move some text in your report, you first cut the text from its current position, and then you paste it in its new position. In such a case select the data and then the action (Cut) to cut the text to the clipboard. Then you mark the new position using the insertion pointer and select Paste to insert the text in the new position.**

---



---

## Specifying Records/Groups to be Included

When select a field to appear on your report, Crystal Reports, by default, prints field values from every record in the selected database. But in many cases you may not want to include all the values, but only a specific range of values. For example, you may want to include only a specific group of customers or a specific range of account numbers out of the total number of values in the database. Or you may want

to include values from only those records that fall within a particular date range. With Crystal Reports this is easy. The program includes four commands on the Print menu for restricting your report to specific records or groups of records:

**Select Records**

This option allows you to limit your report to specific records that fit a condition or conditions you specify. It automatically builds a record selection formula using your responses to dialog box questions. This option requires no knowledge of the Crystal Reports formula language.

**Edit Record Selection Formula**

This option also allows you to limit your report to specific records that fit a condition or conditions you specify. It takes you to the Formula Editor where you can manually build a record selection formula to fit your needs. This command is intended for users who are familiar with the Crystal Reports formula language.

**Select Groups**

This option allows you to limit your report to specific groups that fit a condition or conditions you specify. It automatically builds a group selection formula using your responses to dialog box questions. This option requires no knowledge of the Crystal Reports formula language.

**Edit Group Selection Formula**

This option also allows you to limit your report to specific groups of records that fit a condition or conditions you specify. It takes you to the Formula Editor where you can manually build a group selection formula to fit your needs. This command is intended for users who are familiar with the Crystal Reports formula language.

Select the command, specify the records or groups of records you want included, and your report prints using only the selected records or groups.

---

## Printing the Finished Report

When you want to print your report or when you want to see what your report will look like when printed, you can use Crystal Reports' three printing options:

- ☐ printing to the printer for hard copy output
- ☐ printing to a print window to review your work
- ☐ printing to a disk file for use with other applications

All of these options are available on the Print menu.

When you are creating a report, you will find yourself printing to the print window often, in order to check placement and formatting of the various report elements. The print window even includes a print preview function that lets you see each page of your report as a whole, top to bottom. Then, when you want to print a final or interim copy of the report for hands-on review, you can print to the printer for hard copy output.

If you want to use your report data in another application (in a spreadsheet or word processor for example), you can print the report to a disk file in any of a variety of popular file formats. Once in a disk file, you can import the data into your other application following the importing procedures established by the receiving application.

## Chapter 11 *Practical Crystal Reports*

---

This chapter contains a number of topics on the practical aspects of using Crystal Reports to solve typical reporting problems.

---

### Practical Crystal Reports

This chapter contains a number of topics on the practical aspects of using Crystal Reports to solve typical reporting problems. The topics are broken down into the following groups:

Creating a report	Topics on a variety of report creation skills.
Manipulating text and data	Topics that show you how to manipulate (copy, delete, move, etc.) text and data on your report.
Working with graphics and graphic enhancements	Topics that show you how to size, scale, crop, and fine tune the placement of bit-mapped graphics, and how to create, size, and position lines, boxes, and tables on your report.

---

### Creating a Report

This section leads you through the following report creation topics:

- ☐ Selecting a database
- ☐ Selecting additional databases
- ☐ Linking the databases
- ☐ Understanding the invisible grid

- ☐ Creating margins
- ☐ Inserting fields
- ☐ Selecting fields to move, format, etc.
- ☐ Spacing fields
- ☐ Inserting text
- ☐ Selecting text (to delete, change the font, etc.)
- ☐ Aligning text with fields
- ☐ Inserting blank lines
- ☐ Deleting blank lines
- ☐ Changing field and text fonts
- ☐ Highlighting fields with borders and drop shadows
- ☐ Centering text, field values
- ☐ Inserting page headers and footers
- ☐ Inserting page numbers and other special fields
- ☐ Grouping data
- ☐ Summarizing grouped data
- ☐ Creating group headers
- ☐ Sorting your data
- ☐ Hiding parts of the report when printing
- ☐ Selecting records and groups you want included on your report.
- ☐ Selecting page orientation and paper size

## Selecting a Database

You begin the report creation process by selecting (activating) a database. Once activated, the database serves as a source from which you can select fields to appear on your report and to be included in report formulas.

Select a database using the New Report command on the File menu.

## Selecting Additional Databases

Crystal Reports allows you to draw data from multiple databases for use in a single report. Select the first database you want to use from the Choose Database File

dialog box that appears when select New Report from the File Menu. Select the second and each additional database using the Add File to Report command on the Database menu.

## Linking the Databases

You link databases so that records from one database will match up with records from another. For example, if you activate a Customer database and an Order database, you link the databases so that orders in the Order database can be matched up with the customers who placed the orders (from the Customer database).

Links are fields that are common to the two databases. The fields do not have to have the same name; but they must have the same structure (size, data type), and contain the same kind of data.

- ❑ When you activate additional databases using the Database|Add File to Report command, Crystal Reports takes you directly to the Define Link dialog box. Use this dialog box to establish the link between the database you are activating and a database which is already active..
- ❑ If you later wish to create new links, or update or delete existing links, use the Database|Links command which takes you to the Links dialog box .Use this dialog box for a variety of linking activities.

## Understanding the Invisible Grid

The Report Editor looks very freeform. It looks like you can place anything anywhere and hope for good results. But that is not the case. The Editor contains an invisible grid which directly affects the placement of data fields and text fields.

Think of the grid as a series of row and column coordinates. Crystal Reports allows you to place fields and text only at these coordinates, not between them. In this way it makes it very easy for you to place and space data on your report, and to align text and fields as needed. If you attempt to place a report element between grid coordinates, Crystal Reports “snaps” the element to the grid, (i.e., it moves the element automatically to the nearest coordinate).

- ❑ When place a data field in the Report Editor, Crystal Reports “snaps” it to the nearest coordinate. Use the arrow keys or the mouse to move the fields once they have been placed.
  - When use the arrow keys to move the field, each time you press the arrow the field moves one **grid position**.

- When use the mouse to drag the field to a new location, Crystal Reports “snaps” the field to the nearest coordinate as the field moves.
- ☐ When you type text in the Report Editor, Crystal Reports always begins the text at a grid coordinate.
  - Use the Tab key to move the text; each time you press the Tab key the text moves six **grid positions**

---

NOTE:

**Crystal Reports uses a four pixel horizontal grid and a vertical grid that is variable, based on the line height assigned to the largest font used within a report section.**

---

## Creating Margins

Set margins in Crystal Reports using the Print|Set Printer Margins command.

- ☐ Crystal Reports uses a dashed line to display your margins in the Report Editor and Label Editor.
- ☐ The displayed margins are active: they define the outer printing limits of the report or label. Crystal Reports will not allow you to place or move a field or text so it extends beyond the margins.
- ☐ The numeric margin settings appear in both the Mailing Labels dialog box and in the Printer Margins dialog box.
- ☐ When Create a new report, Crystal Reports uses the non -printing areas established for your printer as default margins. For example, if your printer specifications indicate that the left quarter inch of a page is a non-printing area, Crystal Reports sets the default left margin at .25 inches. While you can set margins that fall inside the non -printing areas, parts of your report may be clipped off if you do.
- ☐ All margins are calculated from the paper edge. Thus, a left margin of .25 inches causes the printing to start exactly one quarter inch in from the edge of the paper.

## Inserting Fields

Insert fields on your report using the Database Field command on the Insert menu.

## Selecting Fields to Move, Format, etc.

To do many things with a field (change the font, move it, etc.), first you must select it. Select means to point to the element with the mouse and then to click the left mouse button to choose the element as the object of the next menu selection. For example, to change font size, you first select the element for which you want to change the font size. Then select the Font option from the Format menu (or Change Font from the right mouse button menu) to select the new font size. The new font size applies only to the field selected.

When select a field, black handles appear on the field box. These handles indicate that the field is selected, and therefore active.

## Selecting Multiple Fields at One Time

To select multiple fields at one time, press the Shift key and, while keeping it depressed, click the various fields you want to select. Handles will appear on each field selected. You can then move or delete the fields as a group. You can also change the font or formatting or add borders for all selected fields.

## Spacing Fields

Set spacing between data fields by placing the fields where you want them in the Report Editor (using the mouse or Arrow keys), checking your spacing using the Print|Print to Window command, and then fine-tuning the spacing, again in the Report Editor.

## Spacing Considerations

The following items can affect column spacing:

### **Field size**

The amount of space allotted for a field may be much greater than the size of the value that appears in the field.

- In a number or dollar amount field (which is right justified by default), this can create a large number of leading blank spaces which can impact field spacing.

- In all other fields (which are left justified by default), it can create a large number of trailing blank spaces which can impact field spacing.

You can reduce the amount of space allotted for a field by selecting the field and then resizing it using the mouse or a Shift-Left Arrow or Shift-Right Arrow key combination.

#### **Mouse**

To reduce the size of a field in the Report Editor using the mouse, select the field and then drag either of the handles to make the field box smaller.

#### **Shift-Left Arrow key**

To reduce the size of a field in the Report Editor using the Shift-Arrow key combination, select the field, press the Shift key, and, while keeping it depressed, press the Left Arrow key enough times to reduce the field to the desired size.

---

#### **NOTE:**

**If you have set up a data block of fields in the Report Editor (i.e., Customer/Address/City in a customer list report), you can resize all of the fields simultaneously. First, click each of the fields while holding down the Shift key. Then resize the fields by dragging on one of the sizing handles from any of the selected fields (using the mouse) or by using the Shift-Arrow key combination.**

---

#### **Alignment**

Number and dollar amount fields are right justified by default; all other data types are left justified. A right aligned field following a left aligned field may appear to be spaced properly in the Report Editor. You may need to fine tune the spacing, however, once you review the report in the Print Window.

## **Inserting Text (Titles, Labels, etc.)**

You can add text to your report by typing it at the insertion point and then moving it into place or, by using the Insert|Text Field command.

Use the following procedure to insert text directly on your report.

1. Move the I-beam cursor to the line on which you wish to enter text.
2. Click the left mouse button to set the insertion point at the left margin of the Report Editor.
3. Type in your text.
4. Move the I-beam cursor in front of the text, click to set the insertion point and push the text into position using the Tab key.

Use the following procedure to insert text using a text field.

1. Select Insert|Text Field.  
The Edit Text Field dialog box appears.
2. Enter your text in the Enter Text edit box, and click OK when finished.  
A rectangular placement cursor appears and changes into a field box when it enters the Report Editor.
3. Position the field box where you want the text field to appear and click the left mouse button to place it.

---

**NOTE:**

**By default, Crystal Reports automatically places a title in the Page Header section to identify each field or formula field insert in your report. These titles are simply text fields. As such, they can be moved, formatted, deleted, resized, or edited to change the text.**

- ☐ **For fields, the default title is the name of the field.**
- ☐ **For formulas, the default title is the name of the formula.**

**The left edge of each title aligns with the left edge of the field it identifies.**

**Automatic titles can be toggled off and on via the Insert Detail Field Titles option in the Options dialog box.**

---

## Selecting Text (To Delete, Change the Font, etc.)

To do many things with text (change the font, delete it, etc.), first you must select it. Select means to highlight the text by dragging the I-beam cursor over it while holding down the left mouse button. Your next action (changing the font, selecting Edit|Cut, etc.) acts upon the text selected.

---

**NOTE:**

**When text is in a text field, select it as you would select any field.**

---

## Aligning Text with Fields

Often in reporting, you may find yourself wanting to align text with column data (that entered as fields or formula fields). To do this, place your fields, type your text, and then move the text into position using the Tab key. It is important to understand why use the Tab key to perform this function and not the Space Bar. Spaces on the screen take up a different amount of space than spaces on the printer. Thus, what looks like it is aligned on screen (using the Space Bar) may not be aligned when you print. If text and fields are aligned to a given tab stop on screen, however, the elements will also be aligned when you print. Since both elements are aligned to the same tab stop, a tab expansion can affect only the absolute position of the elements on a page, not their alignment relative to each other.

Use the following procedure to align text with fields, move the text, the field, or both.

- ☐ Move the text with the Tab key. Each time you press the Tab key the text moves six grid positions.
- ☐ Move the fields with the Arrow keys. Each time you press one of the Arrow keys, the text moves one grid position.

---

### NOTES:

**a - If you want to center the text over a field, or right or left align it, you can type the text into a text field and use the Format|Field alignment commands to set the alignment of the text within the text field.**

**b - Text can be moved right and left (with the Tab and Backspace keys) as can fields (with the Right Arrow and Left Arrow keys). By moving text and fields in concert, you should be able to get good alignment easily.**

**c - To align field titles with fields, working from left to right is best. Make certain the first title is aligned with its field, then align the second title with its field, etc. Aligning, in this case, consists of aligning the left edge of the title with the left edge of the field.**

**d - For the best (and easiest) alignment of text and field data, enter your text elements as text fields using the Insert|Text Field command (instead of entering the text directly onto the report).**

---

## Inserting Blank Lines

To insert a blank line, move the I-beam cursor to the section in which you want to enter the blank line, click the left mouse button to set the insertion point, and press Enter one time for each blank line you want to insert.

## Considerations

- ☐ If place the insertion point before text and then press Enter, the blank lines will appear above the text.
- ☐ If place the insertion point after text and then press Enter, the blank lines will appear below the text.
- ☐ If place the insertion point before or after a field and then press Enter, the blank lines will always appear below the field. If you want to insert blank lines above the field, insert the number of blanks you need below the field as indicated, and then move the field down to the bottom blank line you have just created.

---

NOTE:

**You can also add blank lines by dragging the section boundary to increase section size .**

---

## Deleting Blank Lines

By default the Report Editor allots three lines for the Page Header section and three lines for the Page Footer section of your report. The defaults may allot more lines than you need for those items on your report.

Additionally, you may expand a section on your report by a random number of lines prior to inserting text and data, just to make sure you have enough room for your entries. You may find that you have added more lines than necessary

Printing the report without first deleting the unneeded blank lines can leave gaps in your report that make the report less attractive visually and more difficult to read.

Use the following procedure to delete unneeded blank lines.

- ☐ If an entire section is blank (i.e., if you aren't putting anything into the Page Footer section of your report), you can eliminate the allotted blank lines by eliminating the entire report section via the Hide Section option of the Format Section command.

- ❑ If you have text and/or data in a section and just want to remove the extraneous blank lines, click the I-beam cursor on the blank line you want to delete. This sets the insertion point. Once the insertion point is set, press the Backspace key (the key that deletes the previous character); Crystal Reports deletes the line on which the insertion point is set.

---

NOTE:

**You can also delete blank lines by dragging the section boundary to decrease section size.**

---

## Changing Field and Text Fonts

You can change fonts quickly for any field value or text string in your report using the Font dialog box.

Use the following procedure to change fonts for a field value.

1. Select the field(s) for which you want to change the font.
  - ❑ To select a single field, click the field.
  - ❑ To select multiple fields, hold the Shift key down while click the fields.Handles appear on the selected field(s).
2. Select Format|Font or click the right mouse button and select Change Font from the pop-up menu.

The Font dialog box appears.
3. Make the font, style, size, color, and/or effects changes you want and click OK when finished.

Use the following procedure to change fonts for a text string.

1. With the left mouse button depressed, drag the I-beam cursor over the text of interest to select it.
2. Select Format|Font or click the right mouse button and select Change Font from the pop-up menu. The Font dialog box appears.
3. Make the font, style, size, color, and/or effects changes you want and click OK when finished.

## Highlighting Fields with Borders and Drop Shadows

Crystal Reports makes it easy for you to highlight your data with borders and drop shadows, and color.

Use the following procedure to create borders, drop shadows, and add field color

1. Select the field(s) you want to highlight.
  - ☐ To select a single field, click the field.
  - ☐ To select multiple fields, hold the Shift key down while click the fields. Handles appear on the selected field(s).

2. Select Format|Border and Colors or click the right mouse button and select Change Border and Colors from the pop-up menu.

The Format Border and Colors dialog box appears.

3. Set up the text color, fill (field color), border, and drop shadow you want.
4. Click OK when finished to return to the Report Editor.

The selected fields will be highlighted to your specifications.

---

### NOTE:

**If selected multiple fields, the same highlights will be applied to all fields. If you want to highlight different fields differently, you must select and highlight each unique field individually.**

---

## Centering Text, Field Values

To center text and field values, use the Crystal Reports' alignment command.

1. Select Insert|Text Field and create a text field that contains the text you want.
2. Place the text field in the approximate position you want it to appear on the report.
3. Change the font, font size, and font style for the text field if you wish.
4. Resize the text field box so it matches the margins within which you wish to center the text.

For example, if you want to center text beneath a report title, expand the field box so it's the same size as the report title (or report title field box). If you want to center a header entry over the body of the report, expand the header entry field box so it's the same width as the data in your report.

5. Select Format|Field, and then select *centered* from the Alignment box in the Field Format dialog box when it appears.
6. Select OK when finished; Crystal Reports centers your text within the expanded field box.

Use the following procedure to center a field value within the space allotted for the field:

1. Select the field whose value you want to center.
2. Change the font, font size, and font style for the field if you wish.
3. Select Format|Field, and then select *centered* from the Alignment box in the Field Format dialog box when it appears.
4. Select OK when finished; Crystal Reports centers the field value within the space allotted for the field.

## Inserting Page Headers and Footers

In many cases, you may want to include information at the top and each page of your report.

- ☐ At the top of the report (page header) you may want to include such things as the report title, the report date, the range of dates covered by the report, etc.
- ☐ At the bottom of the report (page footer) you may want to print the page number, the author's name, "Confidential," etc.

Crystal Reports makes it easy for you to include such header and footer information.

## To Insert Page Headers and Footers

Insert page headers and footers by placing the desired information in the appropriate section of the report editor.

- ☐ header information goes in the Page header section
- ☐ footer information goes in the Page footer section
- ☐ Any information placed in these sections prints on each page of the report (unless you take special steps to prevent some printing).

- ☐ You can use text, fields, or formulas in these sections just as you can in the Details section.

## To Format Page Headers and Footers

You can format each element in a header or footer in the same way you would format that element if it appeared in the details section:

- ☐ you can change the font for text, fields, or formulas (see Format|Font),
- ☐ you can center the values horizontally on the page, center them over your report data, or align them flush left, centered, or flush right within the space allotted for them,
- ☐ you can change the way dates, numbers, and currency appear when they print, (see Format|Field) and
- ☐ you can suppress any blank lines that occur in the section (see Format|Section).

To format a header or footer element, select the element and then select the formatting option of interest.

## Inserting Page Numbers and Other Special Fields

Crystal Reports allows you to insert special fields in your reports (in addition to the data fields you draw from databases). These special fields allow you to insert dates, page numbers, and group and record numbers in your report.

Print Date Field	Use Insert Print Date Field to insert a field that prints whatever is the current date when the report prints.
Page Number Field	Use Insert Page Number Field to insert a field that prints the current page number.
Record Number Field	Use Insert Record Number Field to have Crystal Reports number each record printed in the Details section of your report.
Group Number Field	Use Insert Group Number Field to have Crystal Reports number each group in your report.

When select any of these special fields, a rectangular placement cursor appears. Move the cursor to the point where you want to insert the field and click the left mouse button to place it.

## Grouping Data

Grouping data means breaking your data into meaningful groups before it appears on your report. Crystal Reports makes it easy:

- ☐ to group your data, and
- ☐ to evaluate or perform calculations on the data in each group should you so wish.

## Simple Grouping

Simple grouping means breaking the data into groups without performing any additional action (totaling, averaging, etc.) on the grouped data.

- ☐ On a customer list, for example, you may want to group your data by state for use by your customer service or telemarketing personnel. Crystal Reports can quickly organize your data into state groups so that each group contains only customers from a single state.
- ☐ On a sales report you may want to group data by salesrep (each group containing only sales made by a single salesrep) or by customer (each group containing only sales made to a single customer). Crystal Reports gives you the flexibility to group data in a variety of ways.

---

### NOTE:

**Whenever Crystal Reports groups data, it first sorts the data, and then it breaks the sorted data into groups. For example, if you want to group a customer list by state, Crystal Reports first sorts the data by state. Then it begins a new group whenever the state changes. The following data shows that process**

---

If all you want to do is group your data, you can do this easily with Crystal Reports using the Insert|Group command.

Use the following procedure to do simple grouping.

1. Select the field you want to group.

For example:

- if you want to group a customer list by state, select the field that contains the company name, or
  - if you want to group an orders report by customer, select the field that contains the order amount.
2. Select Insert|Group Section. The Insert Group Section dialog box appears.
  3. In the top scroll box, select the field that you want to trigger a grouping, whenever its value changes.  
For example:
    - if you want to group a customer list by state, select the state field, or
    - if you want to group an orders report by customer, select the field that contains the customer name or customer number.
  4. In the second scroll box, select the sort direction (in ascending order = A to Z, 0 to 9, in descending order = Z to A, 9 to 0)
  5. If selected a date or Boolean field in the top scroll box, a third scroll box appears near the bottom of the dialog box. In this scroll box, select the date or Boolean condition that finalizes your subtotal specification.
  6. Select OK when finished. Crystal Reports sorts the data and then breaks it into groups according to your specifications.

---

NOTE:

**You can tell that the data is grouped because two new sections appear in the Report Editor bracketing the Details section.**

---

## Nesting Groups

You may also want to nest groups of data: group data within a group. For example, on a customer list, you may want to group your data by state, and then, within each state group, break the data down further, by city.

Crystal Reports lets you do this easily: use the Insert|Group Section command two times, first to set up the state group and then to set up the city group.

---

NOTE:

**You can add additional nesting levels as needed; there is no practical limit to how many nesting levels you can set up.**

---

Use the following procedure to group using nesting groups.

1. Select the field you want to group.

For example:

- if you want to group a customer list by state and then, within each state group, group the list by city, select the field that contains the company name, or
- if you want to group an orders report by customer and then, within each customer group, group the list by date, select the field that contains the order amount.

2. Select Insert|Group Section.

The Insert Group Section dialog box appears.

3. In the top scroll box, select the field that you want to trigger a grouping, whenever its value changes.

For example:

- if you want to group a customer list by state and then by city, select the state field, or
- if you want to group an orders report by customer and then by date, select the field that contains the customer name or customer number.

4. In the second scroll box, select the sort direction (in ascending order = A to Z, 0 to 9, in descending order = Z to A, 9 to 0)

5. If selected a date or Boolean field in the top scroll box, a third scroll box appears near the bottom of the dialog box. In this scroll box, select the date or Boolean condition that finalizes your subtotal specification.

6. Select OK when finished.

Crystal Reports groups the data according to the first set of specifications.

7. Select the same field selected in Step 1.

8. Select Insert|Group Section again. The Insert Group Section dialog box appears.

9. This time select the field you want to trigger the second group (the group within the group) whenever its value changes.

For example:

- if you want to group a customer list by state and then by city, select the city field, or
- if you want to group an orders report by customer and then by date, select the date field.

10. Select the sort direction (ascending = A to Z, 0 to 9, descending = Z to A, 9 to 0).
11. Select OK when finished. Crystal Reports groups the data, this time using both sets of specifications.
12. Repeat Steps 6 to 10 for each additional group you want to set up.

## Summarizing Grouped Data

Sometimes you may want to go beyond mere grouping of data. You may want to first group the data and then evaluate or perform calculations on the data in each group. You may want to sum, average, or count the values, calculate the variance or standard deviation of the values, or determine the highest (maximum) or lowest (minimum) value in each group.

- ☐ You can sum the data using the Insert|Subtotal or Insert|Summary commands.
- ☐ You can sum, average, count, calculate the variance or standard deviation, or determine the maximum or minimum values using the Insert|Summary commands.

---

NOTE:

**Not all summary options are available for every data type. For example, you cannot sum or average string fields.**

---

## Grouping and Summarizing Grouped Data

1. Select the field you want to group.  
For example:
  - if you want to group a customer list by state and then count the number of values in each group, select the field that contains the company name, or
  - if you want to group an orders report by customer and then determine the average sized order for each customer, select the field that contains the order amount.
2. Select Insert|Summary.  
The Insert Summary dialog box appears.
3. In the top scroll box, select the action you want to take on the grouped data.

For example:

- if you want to count the number of values in each group, select Count,  
or
- if you want to average the values in each group, select Average.

4. In the next scroll box, select the field that you want to trigger a grouping, whenever its value changes.

For example:

- if you want to group a customer list by state, select the state field, or
- if you want to group an orders report by customer, select the field that contains the customer name or customer number.

5. In the next scroll box select the sort direction (ascending = A to Z, 0 to 9, descending = Z to A, 9 to 0).
6. If selected a date or Boolean field in the top scroll box, a third scroll box appears near the bottom of the dialog box. In this scroll box, select the date or Boolean condition that finalizes your summary specification.
7. Select OK when finished. Crystal Reports sorts the data, and then groups and summarizes it to your specifications.

## Grouping and Summarizing Using Nesting Groups

1. Select the field you want to group.

For example:

- if you want to group and count a customer list by state and then, within each state group, group and count the list by city, select the field that contains the company name, or
- if you want to group and sum an orders report by customer and then, within each customer group, group and sum the list by date, select the field that contains the order amount.

2. Select Insert|Summary. The Insert Summary dialog box appears.
3. In the top scroll box, select the action you want to take on the grouped data.

For example:

- if you want to count the number of values in each group, select Count,  
or
- if you want to average the values in each group, select Average.

4. In the next scroll box, select the field that you want to trigger a grouping, whenever its value changes.

For example:

- if you want to group a customer list by state, select the state field, or
- if you want to group an orders report by customer, select the field that contains the customer name or customer number.

5. In the next scroll box select the sort direction (ascending = A to Z, 0 to 9, descending = Z to A, 9 to 0).
6. If selected a date or Boolean field in the top scroll box, a third scroll box appears near the bottom of the dialog box. In this scroll box, select the date or Boolean condition that finalizes your summary specification.
7. Select OK when finished. Crystal Reports groups and summarizes the data to your specifications.
8. Select the same field selected in Step 1.
9. Select Insert|Summary.

The Insert Summary dialog box appears.

10. Select the action you want to take on the grouped data.
11. This time select the field you want to trigger the second group (the group within the group) whenever its value changes.

For example:

- if you want to group and count a customer list by state and then by city, select the city field, or
- if you want to group and sum an orders report by customer and then by date, select the date field.

12. Select the sort direction (ascending = A to Z, 0 to 9, descending = Z to A, 9 to 0).
13. Select OK when finished. Crystal Reports groups and summarizes the data to your specifications.
14. Repeat Steps 8 to 14 for each additional group you want to set up.

---

**NOTE:**

**Group values (subtotals, summaries) and grand totals are automatically formatted to match as closely as possible the formatting of the field they are summarizing.**

---

## Creating Group Headers

Just as Crystal Reports allows you to place a header at the top of each page, it also allows you to place incremental headers above each group in your report. This feature allows you to give your reports a polished, professional appearance.

Whenever you group your data, or insert a subtotal or a summary, Crystal Reports creates two new sections on your report.

- ☐ One section, the Group Footer section (#1: CUSTNUM in the screenshot), appears below the Details section. This section holds the group value field itself.
- ☐ A matching section, the Group Header section (#1: CUSTNUM in the screenshot), appears above the Details section. Anything placed in this section will appear as a header for your group.

---

NOTE:

**Both sections are given the same designation so you can tell that they are tied together. The two sections are also tied together visually.**

---

- ☐ If you put text in the Group Header section, the same text will appear as a header for each group on the report.
- ☐ If you put the field in the Group Header section that use for the sort and group by field, Crystal Reports will create a “live” header for each group. For example, if you have a subtotal that groups your data by Customer, putting a duplicate copy of the Customer field in the Group Header section for that subtotal heads each group with the customer name. You can then format this header field to make it stand out if you wish, using a larger point size, bold face or italics, etc.

---

NOTE:

**You can hide either the Group Header section or the Group Footer section for any group by activating the Hide Section option available via the Format|Section command.**

---

## Multiple Groups for the Same Field

When set up a second group for the same field, Crystal Reports creates a second group section on your report beneath the first group section. Likewise, it creates a second Group Header section above the first Group Header section. For each new group field section on an existing field, Crystal Reports creates a pair of sections that

effectively “bracket” the existing sections. Each section is clearly marked so you can easily tell which header section goes with each group section.

If place headers in each of the Group Header sections, you produce a report that is extremely easy to read. For example, if you have grouped your data by State and then by City within each state, each new State section will be headed by a State header, and each City section within the State section will be headed by a City header.

## Sorting Your Data

Crystal Reports allows you to sort your data by record and by group. This section discusses each of the sorting procedures in depth.

---

NOTE:

**Crystal Reports sorts your data using the sorting rules appropriate to the country that you have selected in the International dialog box in the Windows Control Panel.**

---

## Sorting by Record

Crystal Reports allows you to sort your data on one or more sort fields. Single and multiple field sorts will be covered in this section.

## Single Field Sorts

Single field sorts are sorts in which all the data in the report is sorted based on the values in a single field. Sorting an inventory report by stock number and sorting a customer list by customer number are examples of single field sorts.

## Multiple Field Sorts

In a multiple field sort, Crystal Reports first sorts the entries (alphabetic or numeric) in the first field selected, putting them in ascending or descending order as specified. Then it sorts any entries in the second field that can be sorted *without disturbing the sort order of entries in the first field*. It then sorts any entries in the third field that can be sorted *without disturbing the sort order of the entries in the first two fields*. It follows the same pattern for sorting additional fields.

Use the following procedure to sort by record.

1. Select Print|Record Sort Order. The Sort Order dialog box appears.
2. Select the Sort Field(s) and Sort Direction you want and click OK when finished.

Crystal Reports sorts the records to your specifications.

---

**NOTE:**

**If you group your data using the Insert|Group, Insert|Subtotal, or Insert|Summary command, Crystal Reports sorts your data automatically, as part of the grouping process. For example, if you sort a customer list by state, Crystal Reports first sorts the list alphabetically by state, before breaking it into state groups. In such a case, you do not need to use the Print|Record Sort Order command to generate the sorting.**

---

## Sorting Groups

Crystal Reports allows you to change the order in which groups appear on your report. You can:

- ☐ base the sort on any group (subtotal or summary) in your report, and
- ☐ sort your report so that groups appear in ascending or descending order.

When you group data, Crystal Reports first sorts the data by record and then groups it according to your specifications. Here is some data typical of that found in the *{file.STATE}* field of a customer list:

In order to group the data by state, Crystal Reports sorts the original data alphabetically by state, on the first pass, and then it breaks the data into groups (whenever the value in the state field changes) on the second pass. The resulting groups appear in ascending alphabetical order; the group containing all the customers from Arizona comes before the group containing all the customers from Colorado. Now this is fine if you want the groups appearing in that order. But let's assume we want the data grouped so that the group containing the most records (the state with the most customers) appears first, then the state with the second highest number of records, then the third, etc. Crystal Reports lets you do this easily using the Print|Group Sort Order command.

Use the following procedure to sort groups.

1. Select the Print|Group Sort Order command.

The Sort Order dialog box appears, listing all the groups that you have set up in your report. In our example above, since customer data is grouped by state and the number of records in each state group is counted, a group name similar to this will appear in the Summary Fields box:

Group #n:customer.STATECount of customer.CUSTNAME

Translated, this means that the {customer.CUSTNAME} field (the field that contains the customer name) is grouped and counted every time the value in the {customer.STATE} field changes.

2. Select this group, click the Add button.

Crystal Reports places it in the Sort Fields box and activates the Sort Direction options.

3. Since you want the largest groups (by count) to appear first and the smallest last, select Descending. If you wanted the smallest groups to appear first, you would select Ascending.
4. Click OK when finished.

Crystal Reports sorts the groups to your specifications.

---

**NOTE:**

**When you sort by group, nothing happens to the sort order of the records within a group; only the relative positions of the groups themselves change.**

---

## Hiding Parts of the Report when Printing

Crystal Reports has four formatting commands that suppress (hide) various parts of a report. Each of these commands is discussed individually in *Crystal Reports Help*. The purpose of this section is to show the differences between the commands and how you can use them together to achieve sophisticated report formatting.

The four commands are:

Suppress if Duplicated	Suppress if Duplicated (Field format dialog box) prevents a field value from printing if it is identical to (a duplicate of) the value that comes immediately before it. The value doesn't print but the space in which it would have printed remains.
Suppress if Zero	Suppress if Zero (Format Number/ Currency dialog boxes) prevents a value from printing if it is a zero value. The value doesn't print but the space in which it would have printed remains.

Suppress Blank Lines	Suppress Blank Lines (Format Section dialog box) eliminates nonessential blank lines from your report.
Hide when Printing	Hide when Printing (Field format dialog box) prevents a field from printing. The field doesn't print but the space allotted for the field remains.

## Selecting Records and Groups to Include on Your Report

You can include all records in your report, or you can restrict your report to specific records or groups of records. For example, you can print a sales report showing year to date sales for all sales reps in the country, or you can print a report that presents nationwide sales but only for the last month, or even a report that shows year to date sales but only for those sales reps in Texas and California. Your reports can be as inclusive or exclusive as you wish.

Crystal Reports includes four commands on the Print menu for selecting records and groups.

- Select Records
  - Select Groups
  - Edit Record Selection Formula
  - Edit Group Selection Formula
- ☐ Using the first two commands, Crystal Reports generates a selection formula for you automatically, based on your specifications.
- ☐ Using the last two commands, Create your own selection formula using the Formula Editor.

## Generating a Selection Formula Automatically

The Select Records and the Select Groups commands automatically generate record selection formulas based on your responses to dialog box questions. These commands require no knowledge of the Crystal Reports formula language.

When you're using these commands, select a field/group value and respond to questions about how you want to limit that field or group value. For example, if you want to prepare a report limited to Texas customers, you first click the state field in the customer database. Then, select Print|Select Records (or choose Select Records

from the right mouse button menu). When the Select Records dialog box appears enter your selection criteria in the dialog box.

Use the following procedure to have Crystal Reports generate a selection formula.

1. Select the first field/group value you want Crystal Reports to use for determining the records/groups to be included in the report.
2. Select Print|Select Records or Print|Select Groups, whichever is appropriate.

---

NOTE:

**Alternately, you can select a field or group value and click the right mouse button menu. Select Records appears on the right mouse button menu whenever a field is selected, and Select Groups appears on the right mouse button menu whenever a group value is selected.**

---

The Select Records or Select Groups dialog box appears, depending on your selection.

3. Enter your selection criteria in the dialog box and click OK when finished to return to the Report Editor.
4. Repeat Steps 1- 3 for each additional field/group value you want the program to use for selecting records/groups.

Crystal Reports will generate a selection formula based on your specifications and limit the report to the records or groups you have specified.

---

NOTE:

**To view or edit the selection formula generated by Crystal Reports, select Print|Edit Record Selection Formula or Print|Edit Group Selection Formula, whichever is appropriate to your selection.**

---

## Creating a Selection Formula Manually

The Edit Record Selection Formula and Edit Group Selection Formula commands take you to the Formula Editor so you can manually create your own selection formula. Both of these commands require some understanding of the Crystal Reports formula language.

Using the Formula Editor, you can build a formula that restricts your report to the records or groups you specify. For example, to limit your report to those records with a customer number greater than 099999, you would build a record selection formula similar to this:

```
{file.CustNumb} >> "099999"
```

To limit your report to those groups with a subtotal on the Amount column (triggered by changes in the CustNumb field) less than \$10,000, you would build a group selection formula similar to this:

```
Sum({file.Amount},{file.CustNumb}) << $10000
```

---

NOTE:

**If select:**

**Grouped by file.CustNumb**

**Sum of file.Amount**

**(the group field of interest in this example) from the Field list, Crystal Reports automatically inserts everything into the formula with the exception of <<\$10000.**

---

You can also restrict the records used in the report by date. For example, to restrict an invoice report to invoices from a specific month, May 1991 in this case, you would build a record selection formula similar to this:

```
{file.Date}>=Date(1991,05,01) and  
{file.Date}<<Date(1991,06,01)
```

or this:

```
{file.Date} in Date(1991,04,30) to Date(1991,06,01)
```

or this:

```
Month({file.Date}) = 5
```

You can make your selection formulas as simple or complex as you wish. You can use most of the functions and operators available for building any formula. *Your only restrictions are:*

- ☐ your record or group selection formula must be Boolean, (i.e., it must return a Yes (True) or No (False) value). If build a selection formula that isn't Boolean, you get a Formula Compiler Error that says, "The result of the selection formula must be a yes/no value."
- ☐ it cannot use the PageNumber, GroupNumber, or RecordNumber functions, and it cannot use a Subtotal, Grand Total, or Summary.

## Selecting Date Ranges

When you wish to select records based on a range of dates, you can use any of Crystal Reports' preset date ranges, or you can build a custom range to fit your

needs. For a complete list of Crystal Report date ranges, please see Crystal Reports Help.

## Generating Your Own Selection Formula

1. Select Print|Edit Record Selection Formula or Print|Edit Group Selection Formula.

The Formula Editor appears.

2. Create your selection formula.
3. Click Accept when you are finished.

Crystal Reports will limit your report to the records/groups specified.

---

### NOTE:

**You will find a number of selection formula templates in the Help facility under Edit Record Selection Formula. These templates cover a wide range of typical record selection needs, and they can be pasted into the Formula Editor via the Windows clipboard. Once they're in the Formula Editor, you can change the formulas to fit your data.**

---

## Selecting Page Orientation and Paper Size

You can use Crystal Reports with a variety of paper sizes and with portrait or landscape page orientation. Select paper sizes and page orientation via the Print Setup dialog box which appears when select Print|Select Printer.

Use the following procedure to select a new paper size/page orientation.

- ☐ To select a new paper size and/or page orientation, select Print|Select Printer.
- ☐ When the Print Setup dialog box appears, you activate the printer you want to use if it is not already the default printer.
- ☐ Select your page orientation (Portrait or Landscape) in the Orientation box, and select your paper size and source in the Paper box. Your choice of paper sizes depends on the capabilities of the printer you have selected, and the choice changes from printer to printer. For example, the HP LaserJet driver (PCL) offers a choice of letter, legal, executive or A4 paper sizes whereas the PostScript printer driver lets you choose from letter, letter small, legal, A4, A4 small, B5, and note paper sizes. When

Make your selection and return to Crystal Reports, the paper you have selected is active.

---

## Manipulating Text and Data

This section outlines the various procedures to use for manipulating (copying, deleting, moving, etc.) text and data on your report.

### Adding Text

To add text, set the insertion point where you want the new text to begin, and type in your addition, or use a text field (Insert|Text Field command).

### Copying Text

Use the following procedure to copy text.

1. Select the text you want to copy by dragging the I-beam cursor over the text.
2. Select Edit|Copy.

Crystal Reports moves a copy of the selected text to the Clipboard without disturbing the highlighted text.

3. Set the insertion point where you want to insert the copied text and select Edit|Paste.

Crystal Reports copies the text at the selected point.

---

NOTE:

**You can also copy text to the Clipboard using the fifth button on the Button Bar. You can also paste text into your report from the clipboard using the sixth button on the Button Bar.**

---

### Deleting Text

Use the following procedure to delete text.

- ☐ set the insertion point where you want to begin deleting, and press the Delete key enough times to delete the unneeded text, or
- ☐ select the text you want to delete by dragging the I-beam cursor over it, then:
  - select Edit|Clear (or press Delete) to delete it permanently, or
  - select Edit|Cut (or press Shift-Delete) to cut the text to the clipboard for later use, or
- ☐ set the insertion point at the beginning of a line of text you want to delete and press Shift-End to select the entire line. Then:
  - select Edit|Clear (or press Delete) to delete it permanently,
  - or select Edit|Cut (or press Shift-Delete) to cut the text to the clipboard for later use.

## Editing Text

Delete, edit, and/or add text as needed following the techniques described above.

## Moving Text

You can move text in Crystal Reports in two different ways:

- ☐ By pushing or pulling it to a new position using the Tab key.
- ☐ By cutting it to the Clipboard and then pasting it in a new position.

## Using the Tab Key

Set the insertion point immediately in front of the text you want to move.

- ☐ Press the Tab key to move the text to the right. All text to the right of the insertion point moves each time you press the Tab key.
- ☐ Press the Backspace key to move the text to the left. All text to the right of the insertion point moves each time you press the Tab key.

---

NOTE:

---

---

**If you want to move several pieces of text on a given line into position (i.e., aligning titles with data fields), begin at the left. Move the leftmost text into position, reset the insertion point to the left of the second text element and move it into position, reset the insertion point to the left of the third text element, etc.**

---

## Using Cut and Paste

1. Select the text you want to move.
2. Select Edit|Cut.  
Crystal Reports moves the text to the Clipboard.
3. Set the insertion point to the new text position.
4. Select Edit|Paste to paste the text at the new insertion point.

## Moving Fields

Move a database field by dragging it to a new position with the mouse, or by selecting it and using the Arrow keys.

### Moving Fields with a Mouse

1. Select the field you want to move.
  - ☐ To select a single field, click the field.
  - ☐ To select multiple fields, hold the Shift key down while click the fields. Handles appear on the selected field(s).
2. With the cursor on the field (on one of the fields if you have selected multiple fields) and the left mouse button depressed, move the field to its new position.
3. Release the mouse button when the field is in place.

### Moving Fields with the Arrow keys

1. Select the field you want to move.
  - ☐ To select a single field, click the field.
  - ☐ To select multiple fields, hold the Shift key down while click the fields. Handles appear on the selected field(s).

2. Use the Arrow keys to move the field to its new position.

The field moves one grid position each time you press the Arrow key.

---

NOTES:

**a - Crystal Reports allows you to move fields across other fields without affecting the placement of the bottom fields.**

**b - You can move fields between sections with the following exceptions:**

- ☐ **grand totals cannot be moved outside the Grand Total section, and**
  - ☐ **a subtotal or summary can be moved only within its initial section or to the header portion of its initial section.**
- 

## Deleting Fields

You can delete a database field from your report by selecting it and:

- ☐ pressing the Delete key on the keyboard,
- ☐ selecting Delete Field from the right mouse button pop-up menu, or
- ☐ selecting Clear from the Edit menu.

Each of these methods has the same effect: deleting the selected field. You may find one alternative to be more convenient at one time while a different alternative is more convenient at another.

---

## Working with Graphics and Graphic Enhancements

This section leads you through the following graphics-related topics:

- ☐ Bit-mapped graphics concepts,
- ☐ Inserting and moving graphics,
- ☐ Sizing and scaling graphics,
- ☐ Cropping graphics,
- ☐ Creating, moving, and formatting graphic lines
- ☐ Creating, moving, and formatting graphic boxes

- ☐ Using graphic boxes to highlight data
- ☐ Creating tables using graphic lines and boxes
- ☐ Graphic elements and the Status Bar
- ☐ Using the status bar when positioning a graphic element

## Bit-mapped Graphics Concepts

Bit-mapped graphics are the kind of graphics (pictures, logos, etc.) that are generally produced by paint programs and scanners. They are composed by the graphic designer as a pattern of tiny dots (pixels) on screen, and they are printed as a pattern of tiny dots on your report. Even though there are some limitations to what an individual can create with dots, a skilled graphics designer can nonetheless achieve some stunning effects that can add visual impact to your report.

Crystal Reports allows you to use bit-mapped graphics in your reports from a wide variety of sources:

- ☐ scanners,
- ☐ paint programs,
- ☐ video capture cards,
- ☐ screen capture programs,
- ☐ CompuServe,
- ☐ commercial graphics developers, and
- ☐ shareware and public domain graphics suppliers.

As long as the graphic is stored in one of the popular graphics formats that work with Crystal Reports, you can use it in your report.

- Most paint, scanner, screen capture, and video capture programs can save graphics in one of the compatible file formats (.bmp, .pcx, .gif, .tif, and .tga).
- Additionally, many programs (paint programs, graphics conversion programs, screen capture programs, draw programs) will allow you to import a graphic in a different format and save it in a format that is compatible with Crystal Reports.
- There are, in fact, many low cost shareware programs or free public domain programs that allow you to easily convert a bit -mapped graphic stored in one format to another.

Crystal Reports was designed for maximum graphics compatibility.

---

NOTES:

**a - When select a graphic for inclusion in your report, Crystal Reports stores a copy of the graphic in the report file. Any changes Make to the graphic affect the copy; they do not alter the original.**

**b - When click the right mouse button with the cursor over a graphic, a graphic options menu appears with the name and extension of the originating graphic file at the top. The file name is for information only since the graphic in your report is only a copy of the original. That copy is stored as part of the report and no longer has a separate file name. Any changes Make to the graphic affect the copy only; they do not alter the original.**

---

## Inserting, Moving, and Deleting Graphics

Crystal Reports enables you to insert, move, and delete graphics with ease.

### Inserting a Graphic

You can insert graphics anywhere you want them to appear on your report.

Use the following procedure to insert a graphic.

1. Select Insert|Graphic (or click the Insert Graphic button on the button bar).  
The Choose Graphic File dialog box appears.
2. Select the graphic you want to enter in your report, and click OK when finished.  
Crystal Reports returns you to the Report Editor, and an outline the size of the graphic appears as an aid in placement.
3. Position the outline where you want the graphic to appear and click the left mouse button to place it.

Crystal Reports displays the graphic where placed it.

### Moving a Graphic

You can move a graphic in one of two ways:

- ☐ using the mouse
- ☐ using the dialog box

## Moving Graphics Using the Mouse

Move a graphic with the mouse if you want to determine its final placement visually.

- ☐ To move a graphic using the mouse, click the graphic and, keeping the left mouse button depressed, drag the graphic to the place you want it.

---

### NOTES:

**a - You can move the graphic within its current section, or move it to a new section if you wish. The position of the upper left hand corner of the graphic (not the position of the arrow) determines the section in which the graphic will appear.**

**b - Make sure you do not click the graphic on the handles. If you do, you will resize the graphic when you drag it.**

---

## Moving Graphics Using the Dialog Box

Move a graphic using the dialog box if you want the graphic to appear at an absolute position on your report.

1. Select the graphic you want to move and select Format|Graphic to call up the Graphic Format dialog box. (Alternately you can double click the graphic to call up the dialog box or select the graphic and then select Change Format from the right mouse button menu.)
2. Click the Position button.

The Graphic Position dialog box appears. This dialog box indicates the position of the graphic relative to the top left corner of its section.

- ☐ To position the graphic even with the top left corner (the top flush against the top of the section, the left side flush against the left side of the section), enter the following settings: Top 0.00, Left 0.00.
- ☐ To move the graphic to the right, increase the Left setting. For example, to move the graphic in two inches from the left edge of the section, enter 2.00 for the Left setting (assuming you're working in inches).
- ☐ To move the graphic down in the section, increase the Top setting. For example, to move the graphic down two inches from the top of the section, enter 2.00 for the Top setting.

---

### NOTE:

---

---

**Crystal Reports automatically resizes the section to accommodate the new graphic location.**

---

3. Click OK when finished to return to the Graphic Format dialog box, and click OK once there to return to the Report Editor.

Your graphic will be positioned according to your specifications.

## Deleting a Graphic

Crystal Reports makes it easy for you to delete a graphic from your report.

Use the following procedure to delete a graphic.

1. Select the graphic you want to delete.
2. Select Edit|Clear, press the Delete key, or select Delete Graphic from the right mouse button menu.

## Sizing and Scaling Graphics

*Size* and *Scaling* are two interrelated options that appear in the Graphic Format dialog box.

- ☐ Size refers to the absolute length and width of a graphic. If the original graphic is one inch wide, it has an absolute width of one inch. If you double the width of the graphic it has an absolute width of two inches.
- ☐ Scaling refers to the length and width of a graphic as a percentage of the original length and width. If the original graphic is one inch wide, it has a width scaling value of 100%. If you double the width of the graphic, it has a width scaling value of 200%.
- ☐ When you first place a graphic, Crystal Reports presents it in its original size (the size in which it was saved).
  - When you change the size values in the Graphic Format dialog box, Crystal Reports adapts the scaling values to the new height and/or width.
  - When you change the scaling values in that dialog box, the program adapts the size values to the new height and/or width.
  - When you resize the graphic using the mouse, the program adapts the size values and the scaling values in the dialog box to the new height and/or width.

When select a graphic for placement, Crystal Reports presents an outline that indicates the original size of the graphic (the size in which it was saved). When place the outline, the graphic replaces the frame. You can then enlarge or reduce the size of the graphic to fit your needs. You have two options for doing this:

- ☐ using the mouse, and
- ☐ using the Format|Graphic command.

## Resizing Using the Mouse

You can expand or reduce the size of the graphic using a mouse via the sizing handles that appear on the sides and corners of the graphic when select it. (To select a graphic, click it with the left mouse button.)

## The Sizing Handles

The sizing handles provide a very straightforward means of resizing your graphic:

- ☐ The handles on the right and left sides of the graphic expand or reduce the width of the graphic without affecting the height. For example, if your graphic was a square initially, it becomes a rectangle with the top and bottom becoming longer than the sides (if expanded) or shorter than the sides (if reduced). This kind of sizing results in a graphic that has different proportions than the original.
- ☐ The handles on the top and bottom of the graphic expand or reduce the height of the graphic without affecting the width. For example, if your graphic was a square initially, it becomes a rectangle with the sides becoming longer than the top and bottom (if expanded) or shorter than the top and bottom (if reduced). This kind of sizing also results in a graphic that has different proportions than the original.
- ☐ The handles on the corners of the graphic expand or reduce the height and width of the graphic equally. If your graphic was originally a square, it remains a square even though it has been resized. This kind of sizing results in a graphic that retains the same proportions as the original.

Use the following procedure to resize using a mouse.

1. Click the graphic to select it. Handles appear on the sides and the corners.
2. Resize the graphic by dragging on the appropriate handle.

You can resize your graphic in two different ways using the Graphic Format dialog box:

- ☐ resizing a graphic to an absolute size, and
- ☐ scaling a graphic to a percentage of its original size.

## Resizing to Absolute Size

Use the following procedure to resize a graphic to an absolute size.

1. Click the graphic to select it and then select Format|Graphic to call up the Graphic Format dialog box. (Alternately you can double click the graphic to call up the dialog box or select the graphic and then select Change Format from the right mouse button menu.)
2. Enter the new height and/or width in the Size box.
3. Click OK when finished.

Crystal Reports resizes your graphic to your new specifications.

Use the following procedure to resize a graphic as a percentage of its original size.

1. Click the graphic to select it and then select Format|Graphic to call up the Graphic Format dialog box. (Alternately you can double click the graphic to call up the dialog box or select the graphic and then select Change Format from the right mouse button menu.)
2. Enter the new scale value for the height and/or width in the Scaling box.
3. Click OK when finished.

Crystal Reports resizes your graphic to your new specifications.

---

### NOTES:

**a - When you change the Size values, the Scaling values won't change while the dialog box is open. Also, when you change the Scaling values, the Size values won't change while the dialog box is open. The changes will appear the next time you open the dialog box.**

**b - Crystal Reports automatically resizes the appropriate report section to accommodate the resized graphic.**

---

## Cropping Graphics

Cropping refers to “cutting away” those portions of your graphic that you do not want to print. If, for example, when you scanned your company logo from a letterhead you also scanned in some extraneous material (company address, corporate officers, etc.), you will probably want to “sanitize” the logo before use it. Using Crystal Reports cropping capability, you can easily cut away the extraneous material leaving only the logo to print.

There are two ways to crop a graphic:

- ☐ using the mouse
- ☐ using the dialog box

### Cropping Using the Mouse

Using the mouse is the easiest way to crop a graphic. It doesn't require any guesswork and you see your results immediately on screen.

You crop by dragging the resizing handles while depressing the Shift key.

- ☐ When you drag the top handle down, you cut off part of the top part of the graphic.
- ☐ When you drag the bottom handle up, you cut off part of the bottom part of the graphic.
- ☐ When you drag the right side handle to the left, you cut off part of the right side of the graphic.
- ☐ When you drag the left side handle to the right, you cut off part of the left side of the graphic.
- ☐ When you drag one of the corner handles into the graphic, you cut off part of two sides of the graphic simultaneously (the top and a side, or the bottom and a side).
- ☐ When you drag any of the handles away from the graphic (dragging the top handle up, the left handle to the left, etc.) you expand the frame and put white space between the graphic and the frame.

Use the following procedure to crop a graphic using the mouse.

1. Select the graphic you want to crop.  
Sizing handles appear on the graphic.
2. With the Shift key depressed, crop your graphic by dragging the appropriate sizing handle(s).

3. When finished, release the Shift key, resize the graphic if needed, and move the cropped graphic into place.

---

NOTE:

**Resizing a graphic does not undo the cropping. It simply resizes that portion of the graphic that remains after cropping.**

---

## Cropping Using the Dialog Box

When you crop a graphic using the dialog box, you specify (in inches or centimeters) the piece of the graphic that Crystal Reports is to cut from the top, bottom, right, and/or left side.

---

NOTE:

**This method of cropping can be particularly useful if you want to take a specific sized piece off each side of your graphic. For example, if you want to cut exactly one inch off all four sides of your graphic, you can do it more quickly and accurately with the dialog box than the mouse.**

---

Use the following procedure to crop a graphic using the dialog box.

1. Select the graphic you want to crop and select Format|Graphic to call up the Graphic Format dialog box. (Alternately you can double click the graphic to call up the dialog box or select the graphic and then select Change Format from the right mouse button menu.)
2. In the Cropping box, enter the amount you want to crop from the Top, Left, Bottom, and/or right sides of your graphic.
  - ☐ Enter positive numbers to cut parts off your graphic.
  - ☐ Enter negative numbers to expand the frame, leaving white space between the frame and the graphic.

---

NOTE:

**All cropping settings apply to the size of the original graphic. If the graphic has been resized before cropping, make certain use the Original Size settings as guidelines when entering your new cropping instructions. As a general rule, when you are going to crop and resize a graphic, crop the graphic first, and then resize it.**

---

3. Click OK when finished.

Crystal Reports returns you to the Report Editor with the Graphic cropped to your specifications.

---

**NOTE:**

**While there are many options in the Graphic Format dialog box, to crop a graphic you only need to concern yourself with the cropping instructions. Crystal Reports automatically maintains the scale and adjusts the absolute size of the graphic so it will display and print to your specifications.**

- ☐ **To restore a cropped graphic to its original size and shape, change all of the Cropping of original settings to 0.00.**
  - ☐ **To restore a resized graphic to its original size and shape, change both Scaling settings to 100%.**
  - ☐ **To restore a cropped and resized graphic to its original size and shape, change both the cropping and the scaling settings as described above.**
- 

## Creating, Moving, and Formatting Lines

Crystal Reports enables you to create freeform lines that you can use to highlight field data, blocks of data, or entire sections of your report.

Use the following procedure to create a line.

1. Click Insert|Line.  
A pencil cursor appears.
2. Set the tip of the cursor (the pointed end) where you want the line to begin and drag the cursor horizontally or vertically with the left mouse button depressed.  
The line appears as you drag the cursor.
3. Release the mouse button when the line is the length you want it.

---

**NOTE:**

**To format the line (set line style, width, and color), use the Format|Line command.**

---

## Moving a Line

You can move a graphic line using the mouse, or with the keyboard using the arrow keys.

Use the following procedure to move a line using the mouse.

1. Click the line to select it.

---

NOTE:

**When selecting a line or other graphic, the mouse cursor must be an Arrow. Make sure the cursor changes to an arrow before you attempt to select a line.**

---

2. Drag the line where you want it.  
Make sure to keep the left mouse button depressed as move it.
3. Release the mouse button once your line is in position.

Use the following procedure to move a line with the arrow keys.

1. Click the line to select it.
2. Use the arrow keys to move the line up, down, right, or left and position it where you want it.

---

NOTE:

**Crystal Reports displays line coordinates in the Status Bar to help you adjust the size and position of a line. Using the status bar readings, you can easily place a line at a specific location on your report, or align two or more graphic elements with each other.**

---

## Formatting a Line

Crystal Reports allows you to specify the style, width, and color for each graphic line you include in your report. Enter your line formatting specifications in the Line Format dialog box.

Use the following procedure to format a graphic line.

1. Select the line of interest and then select Format|Line. (Alternately, you can double click the line or select Change Format from the right mouse button menu.)

The Line Format dialog box appears.

2. Enter your formatting instructions for the line.
3. Click OK when finished.

Crystal Reports returns you to the Report Editor with the line formatted to your specifications.

## Resizing a Line

Once you have created a line, you can adjust its length using either the mouse or the keyboard arrow keys.

Use the following procedure to resize a line using the mouse.

1. Select the line you wish to resize.
2. Move the mouse so that the cursor is over one of the square sizing handles at the endpoints of the line.

---

NOTE:

**When the mouse cursor is over one of the sizing handles, it changes to a double headed arrow (the Resizing cursor).**

---

3. Drag the handle until the line is the length you want.

Use the following procedure to resize a line using the arrow keys.

1. Using the mouse, select the line you want to resize.
2. While holding down the Shift key, press:
  - ☐ the Right Arrow key to lengthen a horizontal line,
  - ☐ the Left Arrow key to shorten a horizontal line,
  - ☐ the Down arrow key to lengthen a vertical line, or
  - ☐ the Up arrow key to shorten a vertical line.

## Creating, Moving, and Formatting Boxes

Crystal Reports enables you to create free-form graphic boxes that you can use to highlight field data, blocks of data, or entire sections of your report.

You can also use graphic boxes by themselves, as stand-alone graphic elements, to add visual interest to your report.

Use the following procedure to create a box.

1. Click Insert|Box. A pencil cursor appears.
2. Set the tip of the cursor (the pointed end) where you want to anchor one corner of the box and drag the cursor towards the opposite corner with the left mouse button depressed.

The box appears as you drag the cursor.

3. Release the mouse button when the box is the size you want it.

---

NOTE:

**To format the box (set line style and width, line color, etc.), use the Format|Box command.**

---

## Moving a Box

You can move a graphic box using the mouse, or with the keyboard arrow keys.

Use the following procedure to move a box using the mouse.

1. Click the box to select it.

---

NOTE:

**You can select a box only with an arrow cursor. Position the I-beam near the box edge until it changes to an arrow and then click the edge of the box (not the center) to select it.**

---

2. Drag the box where you want it.  
Make sure to keep the left mouse button depressed as move it.
3. Release the mouse button once your box is in position.

Use the following procedure to move a box with the arrow keys.

1. Click the box to select it.
2. Use the arrow keys on the keyboard to move the box up, down, right, or left until it is in the position that you want.

---

NOTE:

**Crystal Reports displays box coordinates in the Status Bar to help you adjust the size and position of a graphic box. Using the status bar readings, you can easily place a box at a specific location on your report, or align two or more boxes with each other.**

---

## Formatting a Box

Crystal Reports allows you to change:

- ☐ the box style (the kind of line that outlines the box: single solid line, single dashed line, etc.),
- ☐ the width (thickness) of the line that outlines the box, and
- ☐ the color of the line that outlines the box.
- ☐ Additionally, you can specify the fill for the box (whether the box is filled with a color or empty).

Enter your box formatting specifications in the Box Format dialog box.

Use the following procedure to format a box.

1. Select the box of interest and then select Format|Box. (Alternately, you can double click the box or select Change Format from the right mouse button menu.)

The Box Format dialog box appears.

2. Enter your formatting instructions for the box.
3. Click OK when finished.

Crystal Reports returns you to the Report Editor with the box formatted to your specifications.

## Resizing a Box

Once you have created a box, you can adjust its size using either the mouse or the keyboard arrow keys.

Use the following procedure to resize a box using the mouse.

1. Select the box you wish to resize.
2. Move the cursor over one of the square sizing handles.

---

NOTE:

**When the cursor is over one of the sizing handles, it changes to a double headed arrow (the resizing cursor).**

---

3. Drag the handle until the box is the size you want:
  - ☐ If you want to change the height of the box, drag the handle at the top or the bottom.

- ☐ If you want to change the width of the box, drag the handle at the right or the left side.
- ☐ If you want to change both the height and the width at the same time, drag one of the handles at the corners of the box.

Use the following procedure to resize a box using the arrow keys.

1. Using the mouse, select the box you want to resize.
2. While holding down the Shift key, press:
  - ☐ the Right Arrow key to make the box wider,
  - ☐ the Left Arrow key to make the box narrower,
  - ☐ the Down arrow key to make the box taller, or
  - ☐ the Up arrow key to make the box shorter.

***Part Three:***  
***Reference Guide***

---

## Notes

---

# Appendix A *Error Messages*

This appendix lists the error messages associated with LSC. All messages are listed in alphabetical order.

---

## LSC Error Messages

### **A reserved item cannot be edited or deleted.**

There are certain items in the qualification lists that are reserved or pre-defined, for instance, the “TO\_DO” action code is reserved.

### **Component, Operator, and Description fields must be filled in.**

To insert filter criteria for a query through Add Query or Edit Query dialog boxes, you need to select data for all three fields.

### **Delete the action selected?**

LSC asks for your confirmation before deleting an action in the View Tickets window.

### **Delete the Staff selected?**

LSC asks for your confirmation before deleting a staff in the Setup Staff dialog box.

### **Delete the ticket selected?**

LSC asks for your confirmation before deleting a ticket from the database.

### **Delete the View Name selected?**

LSC asks for your confirmation before deleting a view in the Custom View Settings dialog box.

### **Do you want to delete this entry?**

LSC asks for your confirmation before deleting an entry in the Qualification Lists dialog box.

### **Error: The date range is not valid.**

When entering the date range in the Filter Ticket List dialog box, the To date must be equal to or later than the From date.

### **Error: Unable to create or open specified file.**

To archive tickets to a file or restore tickets from a file, LSC must create or open a file accordingly. This message occurs if the operation is unsuccessful.

**Extremely low in memory. Unable to invoke ticket window. Please close one or more tickets to free up memory.**

As an MDI (Multiple Document Interface) application, LSC allows you to open more than one ticket window simultaneously. The maximum number of windows are limited to the PC's memory. When the threshold is reached, the message alerts you to close one or more 'least used' ticket.

**Field cannot be left empty.**

When editing an item in a qualification list, you cannot enter an empty string.

**Login incorrect. Please try again or click the Cancel button to abort.**

The login initials and password combination provided is incorrect. You may retry or abort logging in to LSC.

**Please close all ticket windows before switching to view another set of ticket database.**

LSC allows you to view either the current or a historical database. Before you switch from one to the other, you need to close all ticket windows to prevent database corruption.

**Please do not specify filename with .ACT, .DES, or .DEA extension.**

The ticket database is maintained in 3 files, HLPDSK1H.DAT, HLPDSK1A.DAT, HLPDSK1P.DAT and HLPDSK1T.DAT. When archiving tickets, you need to specify a filename (usually with the .ARC extension). The file will hold data from HLPDSK1H.DAT. LSC will use the same filename, but assign the .ACT extension to hold the data from HLPDSK1A.DAT, the .DES extension to hold the data from HLPDSK1P.DAT, and the .DEA extension to hold the data from HLPDSK1T.DAT. Consequently, the message occurs if you specify the .ACT file extension.

**Please provide a View Name.**

When defining or editing a custom view in the Custom View Settings dialog box, you need to name the view in order to save the configuration.

**Please provide the Account ID.**

When adding/editing the Account information, the Account ID field cannot be left empty.

**Please provide the Company ID.**

When adding/editing the Company information, the Company ID field cannot be left empty.

**Please provide the Staff Initials.**

When adding or editing the staff profile in the Setup Staff dialog box, you need to provide the staff initials. This message can also occur if you did not provide the initials for the Login dialog box.

**Please select a ticket on the View Tickets list first before the specified operation can be completed.**

Before you try to perform a ticket-related operation (e.g., Add Action, Contact Details, Delete Ticket), you must first highlight a ticket on the View Tickets list by clicking on it.

**Please specify a Closed Date/Time which is equal or later than the Opened Date/Time.**

When you close a ticket, you may only specify a Closed Date/Time that is later than the Opened Date/Time.

**Please specify a file for the archived tickets.**

To archive tickets, you need to specify a filename as the destination.

**The Account ID has already been used. Please provide a different ID.**

When adding/editing Account information, the Account ID must be unique.

**The addition of this staff member will exceed the number of LSC users allowed by your license. Please contact McAfee to purchase additional copies of the LSC software.**

You are attempting to add more staff than the number indicated by the LSC license you have purchased.

You may increase the number of staff by upgrading your license. Please contact McAfee.

**The Company ID has already been used. Please provide a different ID.**

When adding/editing Company information, the Company ID must be unique.

**The current ticket is the first ticket in the database according to the Filter/Sort criteria.**

When you choose the Previous tool bar button or choose the Previous Ticket command from the Ticket menu, LSC will search the database for the previous ticket according to the Filter/Sort order. This message appears if the present ticket displayed is the first ticket.

**The current ticket is the last ticket in the database according to the Filter/Sort criteria.**

When you choose the Next tool bar button or choose the Next Ticket command from the Ticket menu, LSC will search the database for the next ticket according to the Filter/Sort order. This message appears if the present ticket displayed is the last ticket.

**The new password was not retyped correctly.**

When adding or editing the staff profile in the Setup Staff dialog box, the two password fields must be equivalent to confirm the choice.

**The number of view names included on the menu has reached the maximum.**

To accommodate the limited length of a pop-up menu, the maximum number of views that can appear on the View menu is ten (10). When defining or editing a custom view in the Custom View Settings dialog box, this message occurs if you choose to include the view on the menu and there are already ten custom-defined views on the menu.

**The related information for this account has changed. Do you wish to update the account information?**

You have added/changed the related information for the account selected in the Account ID field: First Name, Last Name, Phone, Department, or Network Address fields. To update the account information, choose the Yes button. To save the modified information with that ticket only, choose the No button. To return to the Ticket window, choose the Cancel button.

**The Staff Initials has already been used. Please provide different initials.**

When adding or editing the staff profile in the Setup Staff dialog box, the initials must be unique.

**The View Name has already been used. Please provide a different name.**

When defining or editing a custom view in the Custom View Settings dialog box, the view name must be unique.

**There are no archived tickets in the file specified. Please select a file that contains archived tickets.**

When restoring tickets from a file, the file specified does not have archived tickets. The restoration process cannot continue.

**This item has already been defined in the database.**

When adding or editing an item through the Qualification Lists dialog box, the name must be unique within each list.

**This ticket is currently being edited by another user. Please make your changes later.**

To support multiple users, LSClocks the ticket (window) last opened by each user. This ensures that only one person can save changes to a ticket at any time. When users attempt to edit the same ticket simultaneously, only the changes made by the “first” user (the user who locks the ticket) will be effective. All other users will be alerted with a message to edit the ticket later.

**This will save the detail information for this account. Do you wish to continue?**

This message enables you to confirm whether you wish to save modifications made to a company’s contact detail information (the address, Email, fax, etc.). There can only be one company ID associated with an account ID.

**Warning: The corresponding .ACT file cannot be opened. Do you wish to continue?**

When restoring tickets from a file, LSC cannot open the corresponding .ACT file, or the file does not exist in the same directory as the .ARC file (the main archive file). The .ACT file contains the ticket actions.

**Warning: The corresponding .DES file cannot be opened. Do you wish to continue?**

When restoring tickets, LSC cannot open the corresponding .DES file, or the file does not exist in the same directory as the .ARC file (the main archive file). The .DES file contains the ticket problem descriptions.

**Warning: The corresponding .DEA file cannot be opened. Do you wish to continue?**

When restoring tickets, LSC cannot open the corresponding .DEA file, or the file does not exist in the same directory as the .ARC file (the main archive file). The .DEA file contains the action descriptions.

**Warning: The file specified does not have archived tickets. Overwrite file contents?**

When you choose to archive tickets to a file, the file selected has a format that is different from the LSC database. Responding Yes to the message will overwrite the file’s existing content with LSC database information.

**You do not have the rights to add new item in the highlighted field. Please select an existing value or see your administrator for granting the proper rights.**

The LSC administrator has set up your security profile (through Setup Staff) such that you may only select existing items from the Qualification Lists (e.g. Problem Type, Product Category, Issue Type, etc.). In addition, if you are not granted the right to “Setup Staff”, you will not be allowed to add new values in the “Assigned to” and “Person” fields in the Ticket and Add/Edit Action windows respectively. See your LSC administrator to modify your rights.

**You have too many tickets in the database to perform filter/sort operation completely. Please archive old or unwanted tickets.**

This message displays when there is a large number of tickets in your database and you attempt to perform a filter/sort operation. It is recommended that a maximum of 20,000 tickets be maintained in any ticket database.

**You may not delete this staff as he/she is logged in to LSC.**

As a security measure, you may not delete a staff member in the Setup Staff dialog box when he/she is logged in to LSC.

**You may not login to LSC with the same staff initials more than once.**

As a security measure, you may login to LSC using the same initials on only one station.

**You may only delete the activities with the TO\_DO action code.**

Your rights to delete activities are limited to only those that have the “TO\_DO” action code. To delete any other activities, your staff profile needs to be updated in the Setup Staff dialog box.

**You may only edit the tickets that are assigned to you.**

Your rights to edit tickets are limited to those tickets assigned to you only. To edit all other tickets, your staff profile needs to be updated in the Setup Staff dialog box.

**You must enter a Query name.**

When adding or editing a query, the Query Name must be supplied.

**You cannot delete a pre-defined report.**

There are pre-defined reports that are shipped with LSC which print ticket information in a easy-to-read format. These reports are protected from being deleted accidentally.

**You cannot rename a pre-defined report.**

There are pre-defined reports that are shipped with LSC which print ticket information in a easy-to-read format. These reports are protected from being renamed accidentally.

## *Appendix B Btrieve Status Codes*

This appendix lists the return status codes for Novell's Btrieve Record Manager.

---

### **Btrieve Status Codes**

Btrieve returns a status code after each operation an application performs. If the operation was successful, Btrieve returns status code 0. If the operation was not successful, Btrieve will return one of the nonzero status codes described in this section.

If Btrieve returns a code that is not contained in this section, refer to your Btrieve Installation and Operation Manual for error codes from the utilities.

#### **01 INVALID OPERATION**

The operation parameter specified in the call is invalid.

#### **02 I/O ERROR**

An error occurred during disk read/write. This status code indicates that the file has been damaged and must be recreated, or that the file specified on the open call was not created. This status code also occurs if the application passed an invalid position block.

#### **03 FILE NOT OPEN**

The operation cannot execute because the file is not open. A successful Open operation must be performed before Btrieve can process any other operations. This status code may also occur if the application passed an invalid position block for the file.

#### **04 KEY VALUE NOT FOUND**

The specified key value in the index path was not found.

#### **05 DUPLICATE KEY VALUE**

A record with a key field containing a duplicate key value cannot be added to an index that does not allow duplicate values.

**06 INVALID KEY NUMBER**

The value stored in the key number parameter was not valid for the file being accessed. The key number must correspond to one of the keys defined when the file was created or to a supplemental index.

**07 DIFFERENT KEY NUMBER**

The key number parameter changed before a Get Next, Get Next Extended, Get Previous, Get Previous Extended, Update, or Delete operation. The operation specified requires the same key number parameter as the previous operation because Btrieve uses positioning information relative to the previous key number.

If you need to change key numbers between consecutive Get Next, Get Next Extended, Get Previous, or Get Previous Extended operations, use a Get Position operation followed by a Get Direct operation to re-establish positioning for the new index path.

**08 INVALID POSITIONING**

The current position must be established to update or delete a record. Perform a Get or Step operation to establish the current position. This status code may also occur if the application passed an invalid position block for the file.

**09 END-OF-FILE**

The operation tried to read past the file boundaries (end-of-file or start-of-file). When reading a file in ascending order according to an index path, Btrieve returns the last record in that index path. When reading a file in descending order according to an index path, Btrieve returns the first record in the index path.

The Get Extended and Step Extended operations return this status code if the number of records satisfying the filtering condition is less than the number of specified records to be returned and the reject count has not been reached.

**10 MODIFIABLE KEY VALUE ERROR**

The operation tried to modify a key field which is defined as non-modifiable.

**11 INVALID FILENAME**

The filename specified does not conform to file naming conventions.

**12 FILE NOT FOUND**

The filename specified does not exist. Check the key buffer parameter to make sure the pathname is terminated with a blank or a binary zero.

**13 EXTENDED FILE ERROR**

Btrieve could not find the extension file for an extended file which the application tried to open.

Extension files must be loaded on the logical disk drive specified when the extension was created. Both the primary file and its extension file must be on-line to access an extended file.

**14 PRE-IMAGE OPEN ERROR**

The pre-image file could not be created or opened. There are three possible causes for this error.

- Btrieve could not create a new pre-image file because your disk directory is full. Btrieve must be able to create a pre-image file.
- Btrieve could not open the pre-image file to restore file integrity. If the pre-image file was erased or damaged, Btrieve cannot restore the file's integrity. In this case, either use the RECOVER command in the BUTIL utility to retrieve the damaged file's data records in a sequential file, or replace the file with its most recent backup.
- Btrieve could not assign a handle to the pre-image file because the Btrieve was not started by a user with access rights to the pre-image file.

**15 PRE-IMAGE I/O ERROR**

An I/O error occurred during the pre-imaging function. Either the disk is full or the pre-image file is damaged.

- If the disk is full, erase any unnecessary files or extend the file to gain additional disk space.
- If the pre-image file is damaged, the integrity of the Btrieve file cannot be ensured. Either use the RECOVER command in the BUTIL utility to retrieve the damaged file's data records in a sequential file, or replace the file with its most recent backup.

**16 EXPANSION ERROR**

An error occurred while writing the directory structure to disk prior to the creation of the expanded file partition. Either Btrieve could not close the file, or a new page was added to the file and Btrieve could not close and reopen the file to update the directory structure. Check for a disk hardware failure.

**17 CLOSE ERROR**

An error occurred while writing the directory structure to disk prior to closing the file. Either Btrieve could not close the file, or a new page was added to the file and Btrieve could not close and reopen the file to update the directory structure. Check for a disk hardware failure. This status code also occurs if the application passed an invalid position block for the file.

**18 DISK FULL**

The disk is full and the file could not be expanded to accommodate the insertion. Either erase any unnecessary files or extend the file to gain additional disk space.

**19 UNRECOVERABLE ERROR**

An unrecoverable error has occurred. File integrity cannot be ensured. Either use the RECOVER command in the BUTIL utility to retrieve the damaged file's data records in a sequential file, or replace the Btrieve with its most recent backup.

**20 RECORD MANAGER INACTIVE**

A request has been made before the Record Manager has been started. Restart the Record Manager.

In network environments, the operation was not processed because BREQUEST was not loaded. Reload BREQUEST.

**21 KEY BUFFER TOO SHORT**

The key buffer parameter was not long enough to accommodate the key field for the index path requested. Verify that the length of the key buffer equals the defined length of the key specified in the key number parameter. This status code can be returned only by certain interfaces.

**22 DATA BUFFER LENGTH**

The data buffer parameter was not long enough to accommodate the length of the data record defined when the file was created. Verify that the length of the data buffer is at least as long as the file's defined record length.

- For *Get* or *Step* operations, if the data buffer is too short to contain the fixed length portion of the record, Btrieve does not return any data to the data buffer. If the record is a variable length record and the data buffer is too short to contain the entire variable length portion of the record, Btrieve returns as much data as it can and a status code 22, indicating that it could not return the entire record.

- For the *Insert* operation, Btrieve does not insert the record if the data buffer is shorter than the fixed length portion of the record.
- For the *Update* operation, if the data buffer is too short to contain the fixed length portion of any record, Btrieve does not update the record.
- For the *Create*, *Stat*, and *Create Supplemental Index* operations, a status code 22 indicates that the data buffer is not long enough to contain all the file and key specifications, and the alternate collating sequence definition, if specified.

### 23 POSITION BLOCK LENGTH

The position block parameter was not 128 bytes long. This error can only be detected using certain language interfaces.

### 24 PAGE SIZE ERROR

The page size was invalid. The page size must be a multiple of 512 bytes but must be no larger than 4096 bytes. To solve this, run or load BSETUP at the server. Change the page size to 4096 and the largest record size to 17000. See Appendix C for more information.

### 25 CREATE I/O ERROR

The file specified could not be created. Possible causes are a full disk directory or a full disk. If you are creating a file over an existing file, Btrieve returns this status code if the existing file is open or the operating system does not allow the creation for some other reason (for example, a NetWare file is flagged transactional).

### 26 NUMBER OF KEYS

The number of keys specified for the page size was invalid. For standard Btrieve files with a page size of 512 bytes, the number of key segments must be between 1 and 8. For larger page sizes, the number of key segments must be between 1 and 24. You must define at least one key without the null attribute.

### 27 INVALID KEY POSITION

The key field position specified exceeded the defined record length for the file. Either the key position was greater than the record length or the key position plus the key length exceeded the record length. For key-only files, the key must begin in the first byte of the record (position 1).

### 28 INVALID RECORD LENGTH

The record length was invalid. The record length specified (plus overhead for duplicates) must be less than or equal to the page size minus 6 or greater than or equal to 4 bytes long.

### 29 INVALID KEY LENGTH

The key length was invalid. The key length specified must be greater than zero and cannot exceed 255. The length of a binary key must be even. Btrieve requires that each key page in the file is large enough to hold at least eight keys.

If the page size is too small to accommodate eight occurrences of the specified key length (plus overhead), either increase the file's page size, or decrease the key length.

**30 NOT A BTRIEVE FILE**

The filename specified is not a valid Btrieve file. Either the file was not created by Btrieve, or it was created by an earlier version of Btrieve.

Another possibility is that the first page of the file, which contains the File Control Record, is damaged.

**31 FILE ALREADY EXTENDED**

The file specified has already been extended. A file can be extended only once.

**32 EXTEND I/O ERROR**

The file could not be extended. Possible causes are that the directory is full, the disk is full, or the disk is write protected.

**34 INVALID EXTENSION NAME**

The filename specified for the extended partition was invalid.

**35 DIRECTORY ERROR**

An error occurred while changing to the directory that contains the Btrieve file. Either the drive specified in the Get Directory operation does not exist or the pathname specified in a Set Directory operation was invalid.

**36 TRANSACTION ERROR**

A Begin Transaction operation could not be performed because no transactions were specified when the Btrieve was initialized.

**37 TRANSACTION IS ACTIVE**

A Begin Transaction was issued while another transaction was active at that station. Transactions cannot be nested.

**38 TRANSACTION CONTROL FILE I/O ERROR**

An error occurred when Btrieve tried to write to the transaction control file. Possible causes were that the disk was full, the disk was write protected, or the transaction control file (which was created when the Btrieve was loaded) was deleted.

**39 END/ABORT TRANSACTION ERROR**

An End or Abort Transaction operation was issued without a corresponding Begin Transaction operation.

**40 TRANSACTION MAX FILES**

The application tried to update more than the maximum number of files allowed within a transaction. The maximum number of different files that can be updated during a logical transaction is set when Btrieve is configured. Refer to your *Btrieve Installation and Operation manual* for more information on configuration.

**41 OPERATION NOT ALLOWED**

The application tried to perform an operation that is not allowed at this time. Some operations are not allowed under certain operating conditions. For example, Btrieve returns this status code if you attempt to perform a Step, Update, or Delete operation on a key-only file or a Get operation on a data only file.

Also, certain operations are prohibited during transactions because they have too great an effect on the pre-image file or on Btrieve's performance. These operations include Close, Set or Clear Owner, Extend, Create Supplemental Index, and Drop Supplemental Index.

**42 INCOMPLETE ACCELERATED ACCESS**

The application tried to open a file that was previously accessed in accelerated mode and never successfully closed. The file's integrity cannot be ensured. Either use the RECOVER command in the BUTIL utility to build a new file or restore the file using the latest backup.

**43 INVALID RECORD ADDRESS**

The record address specified for a Get Direct operation was invalid. The address is outside of the file's boundaries; it is not on a record boundary within a data page, or on a data page. The 4-byte address you specify for a Get Direct operation should be one that was obtained by a Get Position operation.

**44 NULL KEY PATH**

The application tried to use the Get Direct operation to establish an index path for a key whose value is null in the corresponding record. Btrieve cannot establish positioning based on a null key value.

**45 INCONSISTENT KEY FLAGS**

The key flags specification on a Create operation was inconsistent. If a key has multiple segments, the duplicate, modifiable, and null attributes should be the same for each segment in the key.

**46 ACCESS TO FILE DENIED**

The application opened a file in read-only mode and tried to perform an Update, Delete, or Insert on that file. Another possible cause is that the owner name required for updates was not specified correctly when you opened the file.

**47 MAXIMUM OPEN FILES**

The number of files opened in accelerated mode exceeded the number of buffers available in Btrieve's cache. When a file is opened in accelerated mode, Btrieve reserves one of its cache buffers for the file. Btrieve always reserves five empty buffers for index manipulation. Reconfigure the Btrieve Record Manager with a smaller page size parameter to allocate more buffers.

**48 INVALID ALTERNATE SEQUENCE DEFINITION**

The first byte of an alternate collating sequence definition (the identification byte) did not contain the hexadecimal value AC.

**49 KEY TYPE ERROR**

The application tried to create a file or a supplemental index with an invalid extended key type, or tried to assign an alternate collating sequence to a binary key or key segment. You can only assign an alternate collating sequence to a string, lstring, or zstring key type.

This status code is also returned if you define a supplemental index requiring an alternate collating sequence, and no alternate collating sequence definition exists either in the file or in the key definition passed in the data buffer.

**50 OWNER ALREADY SET**

The application tried to perform a Set Owner operation on a file that already has an owner. Use the Clear Owner operation to remove the previous owner before specifying a new one.

**51 INVALID OWNER**

There are two possible causes for this status code:

- If your application received this status code after a Set Owner operation, the owner names specified in the key buffer and data buffer did not match.
- If your application received this status code after an Open operation, the file you tried to open has an owner name assigned to it. Your application must specify the correct owner name in the data buffer.

**52 ERROR WRITING CACHE**

While trying to make a cache buffer available, Btrieve tried to write data to a logical disk drive from a file that was previously opened in accelerated mode. An I/O error occurred during a write.

**53 INVALID INTERFACE**

An application tried to access a file containing variable length records with a language interface from Btrieve v3.15 or earlier. To access files with variable length records, you must use v4.xx or later interface.

**54 VARIABLE PAGE ERROR**

During a Step Direct operation, Btrieve could not read all or part of the variable length portion of a record. In this case, Btrieve returns as much data as possible to your application. This error usually indicates file damage to one or more pages in the file.

**55 AUTOINCREMENT ERROR**

The application tried to specify either the segmented or duplicate attribute for an autoincrement key type. An autoincrement key cannot be part of another key and cannot allow duplicates.

**56 INCOMPLETE INDEX**

A supplemental index was damaged. This can occur if a Create Supplemental Index operation or a Drop Supplemental Index operation is interrupted and does not run to completion. Perform a Drop Supplemental Index operation to completely remove the index from the file.

**57 EXPANDED MEMORY ERROR**

This error is applicable only in the client-based DOS environment. Btrieve returns this status if it receives an error from the Expanded Memory Manager. This error usually means that Btrieve was unable to save or restore the memory mapping register context, indicating an incompatibility with another application that uses expanded memory.

**58 COMPRESSION BUFFER TOO SHORT**

The application tried to read or write a record that is longer than the value specified for the size of the compression buffer. Reconfigure the Btrieve Record Manager, specifying a higher value for the “Maximum Compressed Record Size” option.

**59 FILE ALREADY EXISTS**

This status code is returned for the Create operation if you specified -1 in the key number parameter and the name of an existing file in the key buffer parameter.

**60 REJECT COUNT REACHED**

Btrieve rejected the number of records specified by the reject count before an Extended Get/Step operation found the requested number of records which satisfy the filtering condition. Check the first two bytes of the data buffer returned for the number of records that were retrieved.

**61 WORK SPACE TOO SMALL**

The Extended Get/Step operations use the pre-image buffer as work space. This error code indicates that the work space was not large enough to hold the filtering data buffer structure and the largest record to be received. The size of the work space is configurable (see the *Btrieve Installation and Operation manual* for more information). Check the first two bytes of the data buffer returned for the number of records that were retrieved.

**62 INCORRECT DESCRIPTOR**

The descriptor (data buffer structure), which is passed for an extended Get or Step operation, is incorrect.

**63 INVALID EXTENDED INSERT BUFFER**

Extended Insert provides an invalid buffer. Either the buffer length is less than five bytes, or the number of records specified is zero.

**64 FILTER LIMIT REACHED**

During an Extended Get Next/Previous operation, a rejected record was reached. Furthermore, this rejected record is such that no other record can satisfy the given filtering condition, going in the direction specified by the operation. This is applicable only if the key specified by the key number is also used as the filtering field.

**65 INCORRECT FIELD OFFSET**

The field offset in the extractor of an Extended Get/Step is invalid based on the length of the retrieved record.

**74 AUTOMATIC TRANSACTION ABORT**

This is an informative status code and is applicable only in the server-based environment. Btrieve replaced an End Transaction operation with an Abort Transaction because an error had been detected for a TTS file inside the transaction. In addition, Btrieve executed the Abort Transaction operation.

**78 DEADLOCK DETECTED**

Btrieve detected a deadlock condition. The application should clear all resources (such as aborting or ending the transaction or releasing all record locks) before proceeding. This allows the other applications to access the resources for which they are waiting.

#### **80 CONFLICT**

The Update or Delete operation could not be performed because the record was changed by another application since your application read the record. Reread the record prior to resending an Update or Delete operation.

#### **81 LOCK ERROR**

This error can result from one of two conditions:

- The Btrieve lock table was full. Decrease the number of locks that your application uses or reconfigure the Btrieve Record Manager and specify a higher value for the “Maximum Number of Record Locks” option.
- The application tried to unlock one record that was locked with a multiple record lock, and the record position stored in the data buffer did not correspond with any record that was locked in that file.

#### **82 LOST POSITION**

When performing a Get Next or Get Previous on a key with duplicates, the application tried to retrieve a record that was deleted or whose key value was modified by another application. Re-establish positioning using a Get Equal or a Get Direct operation.

#### **83 READ OUTSIDE TRANSACTION**

The application tried to delete or update a record within a transaction, but the record was not read within the transaction. If you are going to update or delete a record within a transaction, you must read the record within the transaction to ensure you have first obtained exclusive access to the data.

#### **84 RECORD LOCKED**

The application tried to apply a nowait lock on a record that was currently locked by another application, or to apply a nowait lock on a file while another application held active record lock(s) in that file.

If this status code is returned, your application can use either of the following two methods:

- Retry the operation until it is successful. Under light to moderate network use, this may be the simplest and quickest solution.
- Use the wait option (+100/+300) instead of the nowait option.

#### **85 FILE LOCKED**

The application tried to apply a nowait record or file lock while another application held the file locked. This status code is also returned when the application tries to open a file outside of a transaction and the file is locked by some other application.

If this status code is returned, your application can use either of the following two methods:

- Retry the operation until it is successful. Under light to moderate network use, this may be the simplest and quickest solution.
- Use the wait option (+100/+300) instead of the nowait option.

**86 FILE TABLE FULL**

Btrieve's file table was full. Reconfigure Btrieve and specify a higher value for the "Maximum Number of Open Files" option.

**87 HANDLE TABLE FULL**

This status code is applicable only in the server-based and Windows environments.

Btrieve's handle table was full. Reconfigure the Btrieve and specify a higher value for the "Maximum Number of File Handles" option.

**88 INCOMPATIBLE MODE ERROR**

The application tried to open a file in an incompatible mode. If the first application to access a file opens it in accelerated mode, all other applications must open it in accelerated mode. If the first application to access a file opens it in non-accelerated mode, other applications cannot open the file in accelerated mode.

**90 REDIRECTED DEVICE TABLE FULL**

This status code is applicable only in the server-based environment.

BREQUEST's redirection table or server routing table was full. This occurs if you attach to additional servers or map to additional drives after you loaded BREQUEST. Reload BREQUEST, specifying a larger number for the "Number of File Servers" or "Number of Mapped Drives" options (/S and /R respectively).

This error also occurs if you detach a particular server and attach to a different server. Once a workstation has attached to a server, BREQUEST will not remove its name from the server routing table.

**91 SERVER ERROR**

This status code is applicable only in the server-based environment.

BREQUEST could not establish a session with the server. In NetWare environments, either the NetWare Btrieve Record Manager has not been started or the server was not active. Verify that the NetWare Btrieve Record Manager is active on the server in question.

**92 TRANSACTION TABLE FULL**

This status code is applicable only in the server-based environment.

The maximum number of active transactions was exceeded. Reconfigure Btrieve and specify a higher value for the "Number of Concurrent Transactions" option.

**93 INCOMPATIBLE LOCK TYPE**

Your application tried to mix single record locks (+100/+200) and multiple record locks (+300/+400) in the same file at the same time. All locks of one type must be released before a lock of the other type can be executed.

**94 PERMISSION ERROR**

Your application tried to open or create a file in a directory without the proper privileges. Btrieve does not override the network privileges assigned to users.

#### **95 SESSION NO LONGER VALID**

This status code is applicable only in the server-based environment.

The previously established session was no longer active due to an error at the workstation, the file server, or on the network. Verify that your workstation is still attached to the file server and then reload BREQUEST.

#### **96 COMMUNICATIONS ENVIRONMENT ERROR**

This status code is applicable only in the server-based environment.

This code occurs when loading Btrieve on a NetWare server. The SPX connection table is full. Reload SPX, specifying a higher value for the connection table. Refer to the NetWare system documentation for more information.

#### **97 DATA MESSAGE TOO SMALL**

This status code is applicable only in the server-based environment.

Your application tried to read or write a record which was longer than the Btrieve Record Manager or BREQUEST could handle. Reconfigure the Btrieve Record Manager and specify a higher value for the "Maximum Record Length" option. Reload BREQUEST and specify a higher value for the /D option.

- For an Update, Insert, or Create operation, the application receives this error if the data buffer length it specifies for the record exceeds the length specified for the Btrieve Record Manager or BSERVER.
- For a Get, Step, or Stat operation, the application receives this error if the value specified for the data buffer length is shorter than the length of the data Btrieve would return, regardless of the data buffer length specified in the program.

#### **98 INTERNAL TRANSACTION ERROR**

This status code is applicable only in the server-based environment.

An error has been detected while executing a previous operation on a NetWare TTS file. Therefore, no operation other than Abort Transaction (21) is allowed at this point.

#### **99 THE REQUESTER CANNOT ACCESS THE NETWARE RUNTIME SERVER**

The DOS Requester returns this status code when NetWare Runtime server support is enabled (/C:1) and the Requester either detects no existing connection or cannot find a valid login username. If the Requester cannot find a login username other than SUPERVISOR, there is no valid name to pass.

#### **100 NO CACHE BUFFERS ARE AVAILABLE**

Btrieve has used all the cache buffers it allocated at load time. Using the Setup utility, you can increase the value for the Cache Allocation configuration option. Alternatively, you can change the Number of Remote Sessions configuration option to decrease the number of concurrent Btrieve users. For more

information, refer to Chapter 3, “Installing and Configuring Btrieve,” in the *Btrieve Installation and Operation* manual.

#### **101 INSUFFICIENT OPERATING SYSTEM MEMORY IS AVAILABLE**

There is not enough operating system memory available to perform the requested operation. Decrease the value for the Cache Allocation configuration option (using the Setup utility), decrease the number of concurrent Btrieve users (using the Number of Remote Sessions configuration option in the Setup utility), or add memory to the server. For more information on the configuration options, refer to Chapter 3, “Installing and Configuring Btrieve,” in the *Btrieve Installation and Operation* manual.

#### **102 INSUFFICIENT STACK SPACE IS AVAILABLE**

Btrieve has run out of stack space. To increase the amount of stack space available to your application, relink the application, setting the stack size to a higher value. Only the NLM applications calling Btrieve on the local server get this message.

#### **103 THE CHUNK OFFSET IS TOO BIG**

A Get Direct/Chunk operation has specified an offset beyond the end of the record, either explicitly or through the use of the next-in-record bias to the subfunction value. Unless Btrieve returns this status while processing the first chunk, the operation was partially successful. Check the data buffer length parameter immediately after the call to see how much data (and therefore how many chunks) Btrieve retrieved.

This code can also be returned by the Update Chunk operation when the specified offset is more than one byte beyond the end of the record. However, in this situation, Status Code 103 indicates that Btrieve made no changes to the record.

#### **104 THE LOCALE INFORMATION COULD NOT BE FOUND**

The Create or Create Index function returns this status code to indicate that the operating system was not able to return a collation table for the country ID and code page specified. Check that the application specified the locale’s country ID and code page correctly and that the operating system is configured to support the country ID and code page.

#### **105 THE FILE CANNOT BE CREATED WITH VARIABLE-TAIL ALLOCATION TABLES (VATS)**

The application specified that a Btrieve file should be created with Variable-tail Allocation Tables (VATs); however, the application failed to specify that the file was to use variable-length records (a precondition for files to use VATs). This status applies to key-only files as well as regular data files.

#### **106 THE OPERATION CANNOT GET THE NEXT CHUNK**

The application called the Get Direct/Chunk operation to retrieve a chunk from a record and used the next-in-record bias on the descriptor subfunction. However, after the application established its positioning in the record (but prior to this call), the target record was deleted.

#### **107 CHUNK UPDATES/RETRIEVALS CANNOT BE PERFORMED ON THE FILE**

The application tried to use either a Get Direct/Chunk operation or an Update Chunk operation on a pre-v6.0 formatted file.

---

## Client-Based Btrieve for OS/2 and Windows Status Codes

Client-based Btrieve may return the following status codes in an OS/2 or Windows environment.

### **1001 THE MULTIPLE LOCKS OPTION IS OUT OF RANGE**

The number specified for the Multiple Locks configuration option must be between 1 and 255, inclusive.

### **1002 BTRIEVE CANNOT ALLOCATE THE MEMORY NEEDED**

Make sure that the workstation has enough memory to load all the programs it requires.

### **1003 THE MEMORY SIZE IS TOO SMALL**

Make sure the value for the Memory Size configuration option is large enough to accommodate the required cache size.

### **1004 THE PAGE SIZE OPTION IS OUT OF RANGE**

The value of the Page Size configuration option must be an even multiple of 512, and it must be between 512 and 4,096, inclusive.

### **1005 THE PRE-IMAGE FILE DRIVE OPTION IS INVALID**

You must specify a valid drive letter for the Pre-Image File Drive configuration option.

---

#### **NOTE**

**Pre-image files are used only for files created by Btrieve versions earlier than v6.x, or by v6.x if it was loaded with the Create Btrieve Files in Pre v6.x Format configuration option set to Yes.**

---

### **1006 THE PRE-IMAGE BUFFER SIZE OPTION IS OUT OF RANGE**

The Pre-Image Buffer Size configuration option must be between 1 and 64, inclusive.

---

#### **NOTE**

**Pre-image files are used only for files created by Btrieve versions earlier than v6.x, or by v6.x if it was loaded with the Create Btrieve Files in Pre v6.x Format configuration option set to Yes.**

---

### **1007 THE OPEN FILES OPTION IS OUT OF RANGE**

The Open Files configuration option must be between 1 and 255, inclusive.

### **1008 THE CONFIGURATION OPTIONS ARE INVALID**

The configuration options specified contain invalid or unidentifiable values. For more information on configuration options, refer to the installation and operation manual for your operating environment.

**1009 THE TRANSACTION FILENAME OPTION IS INVALID**

The filename specified for the Transaction Filename configuration option is not valid. Check to make sure that the transaction filename is correct.

**1011 THE COMPRESSION BUFFER SIZE SPECIFIED IS OUT OF RANGE**

The Compression Buffer Size configuration option must be between 1 and 64, inclusive.

**1013 THE TASK TABLE IS FULL (WINDOWS ONLY)**

The Btrieve DLL may return this status code if the task entry table is full. You can remedy this situation by increasing the number of available task entries; use the tasks initialization option (tasks=xxx) under the [BTRIEVE] or [BREQUESTDPMI] headings in NOVDB.INI. The minimum value for this option is 1; the maximum value is 255.

**1014 THE APPLICATION ENCOUNTERED A STOP WARNING**

WBTRVSTOP () returns this status code if the application still has open files or an active transaction. The application must close all files and end all transactions before calling WBTRVSTOP ().

**1015 A POINTER PARAMETER IS INVALID**

One of the pointer parameters passed into Btrieve is invalid.

**1016 BTRIEVE IS ALREADY INITIALIZED**

The Btrieve DLL may return this status code if an attempt is made to initialize Btrieve when it is already initialized. To reinitialize Btrieve, close all files, end/abort all transactions, and call WBTRVSTOP () before calling the initialization function.

**1017 THE BTRIEVE REQUESTER FOR WINDOWS CANNOT FIND WBTRVRES.DLL**

WBTRCALL.DLL returns this status code when it cannot find the resource file WBTRVRES.DLL. You can remedy this situation by placing a copy of the WBTRVRES.DLL file in the same directory as the WBTRCALL.DLL file.

---

## Btrieve Requester Status Codes

This section lists the status codes that the Btrieve Requesters may generate.

**2001 THE MEMORY ALLOCATION IS INSUFFICIENT**

In an OS/2 environment, the Requester cannot allocate enough memory for the parameters specified with the BRQPARMS environment variable. In a DOS environment, reduce the value specified for the /D configuration option.

**2002 THE OPTION IS INVALID OR OUT OF RANGE**

In an OS/2 environment, either one of the options specified with the BRQPARMS environment variable is invalid (such as /P instead of /D) or the value specified for a parameter is out of range. Check the SET BRQPARMS statements to make sure it is correct.

**2003 THE REQUESTER DOES NOT ALLOW LOCAL ACCESS TO THE SPECIFIED FILE**

The application attempted to access a file stored on a local drive. The version of WBTRCALL.DLL installed at the workstation does not allow access to local files.

**2004 SPX IS NOT INSTALLED**

Install the NetWare SPX v1.3 or later communications software for OS/2.

**2005 AN INCORRECT VERSION OF SPX IS INSTALLED**

Install the NetWare SPX v1.3 or later communications software for OS/2.

**2006 THERE IS NO AVAILABLE SPX CONNECTION**

SPX has already established the maximum number of sessions it can handle. To increase the maximum, edit the NET.CFG file. Refer to your NetWare documentation for more information on NET.CFG.

**2007 A POINTER PARAMETER IS INVALID**

One of the pointer parameters passed to Btrieve is invalid. Check the program to ensure that the pointer parameters are correct.

## *Appendix C LSC File List*

This appendix contains a list of all the files included with LAN Support Center.

---

### **LSC Main File List**

<b>File Name</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
USEBRQ.BAT	The batch file that enables users to run LSC with the server-based Btrieve
USEBTR.BAT	The batch file that enables users to run LSC with the client-based Btrieve
FILE.DDF	Data dictionary file #1 needed to build custom reports.
FIELD.DDF	Data dictionary file #2 needed to build custom reports.
INDEX.DDF	Data dictionary file #3 needed to build custom reports.
CONVERT.DLL	The library that converts LSC 2.x database to 3.0 format
LSC.EXE	The main executable program that runs LSC.

---

### **LSC Ticket Records Databases**

<b>File Name</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
------------------	----------------

HLPDSK1A.DAT	Action header database
HLPDSK1H.DAT	Ticket header database
HLPDSK1P.DAT	Ticket problem description database
HLPDSK1T.DAT	Action description database

---

## LSC Administrative Databases

File Name	Purpose
HLPDSK1C.DAT	Unique Account IDs with corresponding information database
HLPDSK1D.DAT	Department database
HLPDSK1F.DAT	Filter criteria database
HLPDSK1G.DAT	Product category database
HLPDSK1I.DAT	Action code database
HLPDSK1L.DAT	Last name database
HLPDSK1M.DAT	First name database
HLPDSK1N.DAT	Network address database
HLPDSK1Q.DAT	Query database
HLPDSK1R.DAT	Report database

HLPDSK1S.DAT	Staff (Login, security, etc.) database
HLPDSK1U.DAT	Issue type database
HLPDSK1V.DAT	Report query database
HLPDSK1X.DAT	Labeling database
HLPDSK1Y.DAT	Problem type database
HLPDSK1Z.DAT	Unique Company IDs with corresponding information database

---

## Pre-defined LSC Reports

---

NOTE:

**If you have modified the LSC database labels, the report names listed in the Choose Report dialog box will reflect the current labels.**

---

File Name	Report Name
ALLACCT.RPT	All Tickets by Account ID
ALLSTAFF.RPT	All Tickets by Assigned To
ALLDEPT.RPT	All Tickets by Department
ALLDATE.RPT	All Tickets by Date
ALLPRIOY.RPT	All Tickets by Priority
ALLPBTYP.RPT	All Tickets by Problem Type
AINITSTF.RPT	Average Initial Response Time by Assigned To
AVEINIT.RPT	Average Initial Response Time by Problem Type
AVESTAFF.RPT	Average Time to Close by Assigned To
AVEPBTYP.RPT	Average Time to Close by Problem Type

CLEDEPT.RPT	Client listing by Department
CLENAME.RPT	Client listing by Last Name, First Name
CLSSTAFF.RPT	Closed Tickets by Assigned To
CLSDATE.RPT	Closed Tickets by Date
CLSDEPT.RPT	Closed Tickets by Department
CLSPRIOY.RPT	Closed Tickets by Priority
CLSPBTYP.RPT	Closed Tickets by Problem Type
ACTLIST.RPT	Daily Action Listing by Person
MONPBTYP.RPT	Monthly Statistics by Problem Type
MONTCKT.RPT	Monthly Ticket Load Statistics by Problem Type
OPNSTAFF.RPT	Open Tickets by Assigned To
OPNDATE.RPT	Open Tickets by Date
OPNDEPT.RPT	Open Tickets by Department
OPNPRIoy.RPT	Open Tickets by Priority
OPNPBTYP.RPT	Open Tickets by Problem Type
TCKETDET.RPT	Ticket Details
QUERY.RPT	Last page of all printed reports which lists the queries applied to the report.

---

## LSC Dynamic Link Libraries

File Name	Purpose
BDIABOUT.DLL	McAfee About Box
BWLIB.DLL	McAfee License Installation
CHK4BRQ.DLL	McAfee Check for Brequest
COMMDLG.DLL	Common Dialog Boxes
CRPE.DLL	Crystal report engine
CTL3D.DLL	Three-D effects to controls
NWCALLS.DLL	Netware functions

NWUTIL.DLL	McAfee NetWare utilities
PDBBTRV.DLL	Crystal's Btrieve DLL
PDCTBTRV.DLL	Crystal's Btrieve DLL
TBPRO1W.DLL	Toolbox DLL
TBPRO2W.DLL	Toolbox DLL
TBPRO3W.DLL	Toolbox DLL
TBPRO5W.DLL	Toolbox DLL
UFLSAMP1.DLL	Crystal Report DLL
UFLSAMPT.DLL	Crystal Report DLL
WBHANDLE.DLL	McAfee Btrieve Handler
WBTRCALL.DLL	Novell Btrieve DLL
WBTRVDEF.DLL	Novell Btrieve DLL
WBTRVRES.DLL	Novell Btrieve DLL

---

## Crystal Reports v2.0 Files

File Name
CR2.BMP
CR3.BMP
CR4.BMP
00019144.DAT
00028747.DAT
BWCC.DLL
CRXLATE.DLL
DDEML.DLL
P3CONV.DLL

P3DIB.DLL
P3FILE.DLL
P3INFO.DLL
PXENGWIN.DLL
CRW.EXE
CRW.HLP
CRW.INI
CRW.NET
BTRLABEL.RPT
BTRORDER.RPT
LABELS.TXT

## *Appendix D Using Brequest*

---

This appendix discusses the use and configuration of the server-based Btrieve record manager, BREQUEST.

---

### Using the Btrieve NLM

The Btrieve record manager must be loaded before running LAN Support Center. It is highly recommended that you use the server-based BREQUEST program. This appendix offers recommendations on setting up and using the Btrieve NLM.

---

NOTE:

- a - When using BREQUEST, version 6.10 or greater is required.**
  - b - When using BREQUEST, BSPXCOM must also be loaded on the fileserver. For details on loading these programs, refer to your Novell documentation.**
- 

### Using the NLM with LSC

Using BREQUEST, as opposed to BTRIEVE, will improve the performance of data collection, auditing and reporting by at least 50% and by as much as 500%. An additional advantage is the savings in local (client) memory—BTRIEVE.EXE can occupy from 50-85K of conventional memory, whereas BREQUEST.EXE can occupy approximately 31-45K. The exact amount of memory required for both programs depends on the specified command line parameters.

Use the following procedure to configure the Btrieve NLM.

1. To configure the NLM, run BSETUP.NLM.  
At the file server console prompt, type:  
`LOAD BSETUP <ENTER>`
2. Choose Set Configuration to verify that the following options are defined.

The values provided below are the minimum values required; your current values may be set higher.

- ☐ Number of Open Files: = 22 (default = 20)
- ☐ Number of Transactions: = 1 (default = 0)
- ☐ Largest Record Size: = 17000 (default = 8192)
- ☐ Largest Page Size: = 4096 (default = 4096)

---

NOTE:

**All other BSETUP options can remain unchanged.**

---

3. Save the configuration, and exit BSETUP.

BSETUP writes the configuration changes to the BSTART.NCF file. The changes do not take effect until the next time the Btrieve NLM is loaded.

4. To load the NLM, run BSTART.

At the file server console prompt, type:

```
BSTART <ENTER>
```

BSTART is an NCF file which loads both BTRIEVE.NLM and BSPXCOM.NLM.

5. To unload the Btrieve NLM, issue the BSTOP command.

If the Btrieve NLM was loaded when changes were made in BSETUP, you need to unload Btrieve and then reload the NLMs in order for the changes to take effect.

For example, at the console prompt, type:

```
BSTOP <ENTER>
```

```
BSTART <ENTER>
```

---

NOTES:

a - Loading SPX - **All LSC modules require SPX to be loaded at each workstation. Brequest communicates with BSPXCOM.NLM via SPX. BSPXCOM, in turn, passes all requests from Brequest to the BTRIEVE NLM. If SPX is not loaded at a workstation, that workstation has no communication whatsoever with the Btrieve record manager. If you have loaded Brequest and are getting "BTRIEVE Record Manager Not Loaded" messages, make sure that SPX is loaded. This normally only becomes an issue on workstations that load the ODI drivers because the ODI drivers can optionally load SPX.**

---

---

b - Brequest /D switch - **The /D: parameter specifies the size of the “data message buffer length.” This buffer refers to the maximum record size that the NLM will transmit to the workstation. This switch should be set to 17000 for the purposes of LSC.**

c - Brequest Error 87 - **If you receive an “Error 87” from Btrieve while using Brequest, increase the ‘Number Of Open Files’ setting in BSETUP.**

---

---

## Using the BTRIEVE VAP

All of the options and suggestions regarding the Btrieve NLM also apply to the Btrieve VAP. The BSETUP parameters, Brequest parameters, and Windows requester initialization settings are identical.

---

NOTE:

**When using the Btrieve VAP, the file server needs to be rebooted in order for any changes in BSETUP to take effect.**

---

## *Appendix E LSC Import/Export Utility*

This appendix discusses the use of the DOS-based LSC import/export utility.

---

### Using the Import/Export Utility

The import/export utility, LSCIMEX.EXE, is a DOS application which allows you to import or export data into/from the LSC 3.0 databases. The import/export utility is copied into the LSC program directory upon installing LSC.

The following requirements must be met before running the import/export utility:

- ☐ The utility must be executed from within the directory in which the LSC 3.0 software and database files are located.
- ☐ The Btrieve record manager must be loaded before running the utility.

Because LSC 3.0 has a customizable interface, most data fields are not restricted to a particular format. The import/export utility will match the field names in LSC even if they have been changed by the administrator. The only fields that have a specified format are date and time fields. All other fields may be of any type or format.

Use the following keys to navigate throughout the utility.

Key	Action
<ESC>	Return to the previous menu. Also used to initiate the export or import process.
<Up/Down Arrow>	Highlight the menu option in the direction of the arrow.
<Enter>	Choose the highlighted menu option.

A mouse can also be used to navigate throughout the utility and choose menu options. The mouse cursor appears as a small square. When the small square rests on a desired menu option, click the left mouse button to choose the option.

## Importing Data into LSC

Tickets are imported from the file ITICKETS.TXT, and actions from I ACTIONS.TXT. To import a file, copy it into the LSC directory as one of the appropriate file names. The file(s) must be in comma delimited ASCII format.

---

NOTE:

**Quotes around each text field are optional. If your text fields contain commas, quotes are required to prevent the commas from being interpreted as delimiters.**

---

Use the following procedure to import LSC ticket data from an ASCII text file.

1. Load the Btrieve record manager.

Either server-based or client-based Btrieve can be used with the import/export utility. Refer to “Btrieve Configuration Options” in Chapter 2 for a discussion of the Btrieve options.

2. Execute the import/export utility.

Enter the following command at the DOS prompt:

```
LSCIMEX <ENTER>
```

The main menu displays.

3. From the main menu, choose the Import Data into LSC option.

The Import Menu displays.

4. Choose either Import Ticket Information or Import Action Information, depending on the data you want to import.

Ticket information and action information are imported separately because there can be many actions associated with one ticket. In order to keep track of which actions are associated with which tickets, the ticket number field is required for importing actions.

After choosing one of the import options, a list of fields displays.

5. Indicate the layout of the fields in the import file.

This list represents the fields available for import. The numbers to the left of each field indicate the order of the fields in the import file. For example, if you want to import a file which contains ticket number, priority, status and date (in that order), you would put a 1 next to the Ticket Number field, a 2 next to the Priority field, a 3 next to the Status field, and a 4 next to the Date field.

A zero in any field indicates that the field does not exist in the import file, and it should be ignored. In the example above, a zero would be placed in all remaining fields. With the exception of the zeros, the numbers you place in the fields must be unique.

As mentioned above, the ticket number field is required when importing actions. If the ticket number contains a zero when importing tickets, then only contact information (and not ticket information) is recorded.

6. Press the <ESC> key, and choose the Yes option to begin the import process.

Ticket information must be imported from a file named ITICKETS.TXT, and actions must be imported from I ACTIONS.TXT.

Once selecting the field order and starting the import process, a "Please Wait" box will appear and the number of records being imported displays on the screen. If any errors occur during the process, you will be notified at the end and directed to the file ERRORLOG.TXT for details.

7. To exit the utility, press the <ESC> key two times.

A box displays with the title "Exit LSC Import/Export Program."

8. Choose the Yes option to exit the utility.

## Exporting LSC Ticket Data

Use the following procedure to export LSC ticket data to an ASCII text file.

1. Load the Btrieve record manager.

Either server-based or client-based Btrieve can be used with the import/export utility. Refer to "Btrieve Configuration Options" in Chapter 2 for a discussion of the Btrieve options.

2. Execute the import/export utility.

Enter the following command at the DOS prompt:

```
LSCIMEX <ENTER>
```

The main menu displays.

3. From the main menu, choose the Export Data from LSC option.

The Export Menu displays.

4. Choose either Export Ticket Information or Export Action Information, depending on the data you want to export.

Ticket information and action information are exported separately because there can be many actions associated with one ticket.

After choosing one of the export options, a list of fields displays.

5. Indicate the order in which to export the fields.

This list represents the fields available for export. The numbers to the left of each field indicate the order in which the fields will be exported. For example, if you want to export the ticket number, action code and person, you would put a 1 next to the Ticket Number field, a 2 next to the Action Code field, and a 3 next to the Person field.

In order to keep track of which actions are associated with which tickets, the ticket number field is required for exporting actions. It is automatically exported as the first field for actions.

If the ticket number contains a zero when exporting tickets, then only contact information (and not ticket information) is recorded.

A zero in any field indicates that you want to skip that field during an export. In the example above, a zero would be placed in all other fields. With the exception of the zeros, the numbers you place in the fields must be unique.

6. Press the <ESC> key, and choose the Yes option to begin the export process.

Ticket information is exported to the file TICKETS.TXT, and actions are exported to ACTIONS.TXT. The files generated from an export will have quotes around each text field but not around the integer fields.

Once selecting the field order and starting the export process, a "Please Wait" box will appear and the number of records being exported displays on the screen. If any errors occur during the process, you will be notified at the end and directed to the file ERRORLOG.TXT for details.

7. To exit the utility, press the <ESC> key two times.

A box displays with the title "Exit LSC Import/Export Program."

8. Choose the Yes option to exit the utility.

---

# Index

## A

---

about LSC, 9  
    features, 14  
    major components, 15  
    purpose of, 9  
accounts, 88  
    assigning to tickets, 75  
    linked fields, 82  
    maintaining, 92, 119  
    setting up, 54, 89, 119  
**actions**, 76, 119  
    adding, 122  
    deleting, 126  
    editing, 125  
**Administration menu**, 48  
application window, 43, 46  
archiving tickets, 105

## B

---

background report, 155  
batch files, 39  
BREQUEST.EXE, 38, 296  
BSETUP, 296  
BSPXCOM, 39, 297  
BSTART, 297  
Btrieve  
    Brequest, 45, 51, 296  
    configuration options, 38  
    NLM, 296  
    Status Codes, 273  
    VAP, 298

## C

---

**company IDs**, 76, 93  
    adding, 93  
    assigning to accounts, 89, 91, 128  
    maintaining, 96  
components, 15  
console, 16

**contact details**, 76  
    and company IDs, 126  
    maintaining, 126  
conversion charts, 32  
cost savings, 12  
Crystal Reports, 17, 152  
    Button Bar, 184  
    Creating a Report, 220  
    Data Types, 200  
    Editing and Formatting  
    Getting Help, 187  
    Hiding Parts of the Report, 242  
    How it Works, 182  
    Manipulating Text and Data, 247  
    Menu Bar, 183  
    Overview, 181  
    Printing, 218  
    Quick Start Guide, 178  
    Registration, 177  
    Report Editor, 197  
    Report Windows, 186  
    Right Mouse Button, 185  
    Screen Components, 182  
    Selecting Paper Size, 246  
    Selecting Records, 243  
    Starting, 176  
    Title Bar, 183  
    Uses, 181  
    Using Formulas and Functions, 204  
    Working with Graphics, 250  
**current ticket database**, 16, 105  
    viewing, 151  
custom ticket views, 142  
    creating, 143  
    maintaining, 147

## D

---

database  
    customizing, 52, 75  
    customizing labels, 81

- default labeling, 80
- labeling, 79
- planning, 42

databases, 16

date editing, 129

DISKCOPY, 21

display

- ticket data, 69

## E

---

**Edit menu**, 48

environment, 18

error messages

- LSC, 267

exiting LSC, 47

exporting data, 301

## F

---

feature list, 14

file list, 290

**File menu**, 48

filtering, 135

## G

---

generating reports, 153

## H

---

help desks, 10

- Brightwork solution, 10
- cost justification, 12
- cost of, 12
- problem with, 10

help facility, 50

**Help menu**, 48

**historical ticket database** 16, 105

- viewing, 149

## I

---

icons, 48

import/export utility, 18, 299

importing data, 300

installation, 21, 23

- basic, 25
- before you start, 22
- conversion, 31
- custom, 27

- troubleshooting, 36
- upgrade, 29

investigating, 131

IPX, 22

## K

---

keyboard use, 50

## L

---

launching LSC, 44

log file, 24

login default, 46, 83

LSC and Btrieve, 39

LSC and NetWare, 22

LSC.EXE, 16

LSC.INI, 50

LSCIMEX.EXE, 299

## M

---

manual organization, 19

menu bar, 47

## N

---

NETWARE.DRV, 22

NETX, 22

## O

---

ODI drivers, 22

## P

---

passwords, 86

printer setup, 110

printing

- notes on, 155
- reports, 153
- tickets, 121

problem type sub-categories, 103

## Q

---

qualification lists, 16, 97

- customizing labels, 81
- defining entries, 57, 100

queries, 155

- applying to reports, 156
- creating, 159
- deleting, 163

editing, 162  
removing from reports, 159

## R

---

reporting module, 17, 152

reports

- adding, 164
- applying queries, 156
- customizing, 157
- deleting, 165
- generating, 66
- pre-defined, 153
- printing, 153
- renaming, 164
- sample, 165

**Reports menu**, 48

requirements, 18

restoring tickets, 108

## S

---

security, 83

- granting rights**, 86

SETUP, 23

setup and administration, 78

smart-launching, 132

sorting, 139

staff membership, 83

- adding, 84

- maintaining, 87

## T

---

temporary files, 155

ticket database

- viewing, 64

ticket databases, 149

**Ticket menu**, 48

ticket numbering, 74

Ticket window, 73

- action entries**, 76

- contact details**, 76

- fields, 113

- modifying labels, 75

- numbering scheme, 74

- viewing multiple, 75

tickets

- actions, 119

- archiving, 105

- creating, 59, 113, 117

- cross-referencing, 119

- deleting, 120

- printing, 121

- restoring, 108

tool bar, 48

troubleshooting, 36

tutorial, 52

## U

---

uninstalling, 36

upgrade

- converting from LSC 2.02, 31

upgrade conversion charts, 32

upgrading, 29

## V

---

version numbers, 23

**View menu**, 48

View Tickets window, 70

- filtering, 135

- layout, 70

- scrolling, 71

- sorting, 139

VIPX, 22

VNETWARE.386, 22

## W

---

**Window menu**, 48

Windows terms, 43